

माध्यमिक शिक्षा मंडल मध्यप्रदेश, भोपाल द्वारा जारी  
इकाईवार नवीनतम पाठ्यक्रम एवं अंक योजना पर आधारित



# युगबोध

# परीक्षा बोध

## 2024

## अंग्रेजी

कक्षा  
10वीं

2022,23  
में पूछे गये  
प्रश्न-पत्रों का  
समावेश

हिन्दी एवं अंग्रेजी  
माध्यम के लिए

दो सेट प्रादर्श एवं दो सेट संभावित प्रश्न-पत्र सहित

◆ मेरिट में स्थान प्राप्त  
छात्रों के साक्षात्कार

“परीक्षा में आने वाले सभी  
संभावित प्रश्नों से सुसज्जित”



माध्यमिक शिक्षा मण्डल मध्यप्रदेश, भोपाल द्वारा जारी  
इकाईवार नवीनतम् पाठ्यक्रम एवं अंक योजना पर आधारित

# युगबोध परीक्षा बोर्ड 2024

## अंग्रेजा

### कक्षा X

(हिन्दी एवं अंग्रेजी माध्यम के लिए)

मेरिट में स्थान प्राप्त छात्रों के साक्षात्कार

दो सेट प्रादर्श एवं दो सेट सम्भावित प्रश्न-पत्र सहित

विशेषताएँ ....

1. सम्पूर्ण विषय-सामग्री का निचोड़ एवं उत्तरों की श्रेष्ठ प्रस्तुति।
2. मा. शि. मंडल के उद्देश्यों, आदर्शों एवं निर्देशों का पूर्णतः पालन करते हुए तथा विषय-विशेषज्ञों द्वारा तैयार परीक्षोपयोगी महत्वपूर्ण प्रश्नों से युक्त एक सर्वश्रेष्ठ पुस्तक।
3. प्रश्न-उत्तरों का एक ऐसा संग्रह जिसमें 2024 की परीक्षा में शत-प्रतिशत प्रश्न पूछे जाने की संभावना।
4. परीक्षोपयोगी प्रश्नों के सटीक, बिन्दुवार एवं संतुलित उत्तर—सरल, स्पष्ट, व्यावहारिक एवं बोधगम्य भाषा-शैली में।

नवबोध शिक्षा समिति द्वारा सम्पादित

\* **प्रकाशक :** नवबोध प्रकाशन, 7, समता कॉलोनी, रायपुर (छ.ग.)

\* **मुद्रक :** युगबोध डिजिटल प्रिंटर्स, 6, समता कॉलोनी, रायपुर (छ.ग.)

मूल्य : 90.00

**अन्य जानकारी :**

परीक्षा बोध सभी विषयों में कक्षा 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 एवं 11, 12 के लिए—  
वाणिज्य, जीव विज्ञान, गणित विषयों में हिन्दी एवं अंग्रेजी माध्यम में अलग-  
अलग तथा कला, गृह विज्ञान व कृषि विषयों में केवल हिन्दी माध्यम में  
उपलब्ध हैं।

\* नवीन संस्करण

\* प्रकाशक

**नवबोध प्रकाशन**

7, समता कॉलोनी, (गढ़)

ऑफिस : 200930

Website : dhprakashan.com

e-mail : nan@navbodh.com

helpline : 7471145005

Facebook : fb.com/navbodh

© प्रकाशकाधीन

कॉपीराइट रजिस्ट्रेशन नं.— A 55026/98, ट्रेडमार्क रजिस्ट्रेशन नं.— 553665 B

प्रस्तुत पुस्तक का कोई भी अंश प्रकाशक की लिखित अनुमति के बिना प्रकाशित करने पर कानूनी कार्यवाही की जायेगी। यह पुस्तक मा. शि. मंडल भोपाल के वेबसाईट में जारी नवीनतम पाठ्यक्रमानुसार एवं अंक योजना के अनुसार तैयार की गयी है। नवीनतम पाठ्यक्रमानुसार पुस्तकें पूर्ण सावधानी से तैयार की गई हैं फिर भी कोई त्रुटि रह जाये या इस पुस्तक के प्रकाशन के पश्चात् मंडल अपने निर्णय में संशोधन करे, तो इसके लिए प्रकाशक जिम्मेदार नहीं होगा। सभी कानूनी विवाद रायपुर न्यायिक क्षेत्राधिकार के अंतर्गत निपटाये जायेंगे।

माध्यमिक शिक्षा मण्डल, मध्यप्रदेश, भोपाल  
हाईस्कूल परीक्षा सत्र 2023-24  
अंक योजना

कक्षा : 10वीं  
विषय : अंग्रेजी

पूर्णांक : 75  
समय : 3.00 घंटे

| क्र. | इकाई/अध्याय   | आवंटित अंक |
|------|---|------------|
|      | <b>Section-A (10 Marks)</b><br>(Reading)  |            |
| 1.   | Q. 1 Unseen Passage   | 5          |
| 2.   | Q. 2 Unseen Passage   | 5          |
|      | <b>Section-B (16 Marks)</b><br>(Writing)  |            |
| 3.   | Q. 3 Note Making (Title + Notes)  | 4          |
| 4.   | Q. 4 Letter Writing (Formal/Informal letter)  | 4          |
| 5.   | Q. 5 Long Composition (Essay/Article/Paragraph)   | 5          |
| 6.   | Q. 6 Picture Guided Composition   | 3          |
|      | <b>Section-C (10 Marks)</b><br>(Grammar)  |            |
| 7.   | Q. 7 Fill in the blanks   | 5          |
| 8.   | Q. 8 Do as directed   | 5          |
|      | <b>Section-D (39 Marks)</b><br>(Textbooks)  |            |
| 9.   | Q. 9 Textual MCQs (From First Flight)   | 4          |
| 10.  | Q. 10 (A) Extracts from Prose. (From 'First Flight')<br>(B) Extracts from Poetry. (From 'First Flight') | 6          |
| 11.  | Q. 11 Short answer type questions from 'First Flight'   | 12         |
| 12.  | Q. 12 Short answer type questions from 'Poetry'   | 4          |
| 13.  | Q. 13 Short answer type questions from 'Footprint<br>without feet'                                      | 4          |
| 14.  | Q. 14 Long answer type questions from prose (First Flight)  | 3          |
| 15.  | Q. 15 Long answer type questions from Poetry 'First Flight'   | 3          |
| 16.  | Q. 16 Long answer type questions from 'Footprint without<br>Feet'                                       | 3          |
|      | <b>कुल योग</b>  | <b>75</b>  |

उपरोक्त पाठ्यक्रम के अनुसार म.प्र. राज्य शिक्षा केन्द्र भोपाल द्वारा सत्र 2023-24 में  
प्रकाशित पाठ्यपुस्तक ही अधिकृत है।



# CONTENTS

## ENGLISH (M.P.) CLASS X

| Sections | Description                                       | Pages No. |
|----------|---|-----------|
|          | Two Sets Model & Two Sets Expected Question Paper | 5-18      |
| A.       | Unseen Passages                                   | 19-35     |
| B.       | I. Note Making and Summarising                    | 36-44     |
|          | II. Letter Writing                                | 45-53     |
|          | III. Long Composition                             | 54-65     |
|          | IV. Picture Guided Compositions                   | 66-70     |
| C.       | Grammar   | 71-84     |
| D.       | I. First Flight                                   | 85-158    |
|          | II. Footprints Without Feet                       | 159-175   |
|          | Board Question Paper 2022, 23                     | 176-184   |

5

# MODEL QUESTION PAPER SET-I

## ENGLISH (M.P.) : Class X

Time : 3 Hrs.

M. M. : 75

- Instructions :** 1. Read all the questions carefully.  
2. Read the instructions given with the questions before attempting them.  
3. Marks of each question are indicated against it.  
Question No. 11, 12, 13 in 30 words. Question No. 14, 15, 16 in 75 words.

### Section-A

#### (Reading)

- Q. 1.** Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below : [5]  
The great Pyramid at Giza ..... the seven wonder ..... world.  
**Ans.** Refer to Section A, Reading Skills, Unseen Passages, 1. Factual Passage No. 3.
- Q. 2.** Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below : [5]  
"Recycling is the process ..... job is to ..... it efficiently".  
**Ans.** Refer to Reading Section A, Reading Skills, Unseen Passages, Recursive Passages, Passage No. 8.

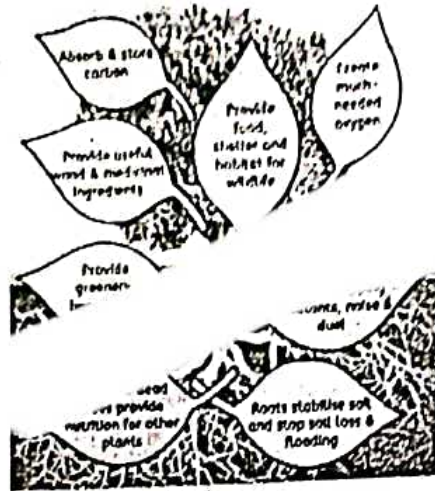
### Section-B

#### (Writing)

- Q. 3.** Read the following passage carefully and answer the following questions : [4]  
"Fat comes in two types, ..... to chemical effluents".  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, I. Reading and Summarizing, Passage No. 14 (Extra passage).
- Q. 4.** You are Sumeet, studying in Chandrashekher School, Pitham Pura, Indore. Write an application to the Principal of your school, requesting him to grant you full fee concession. [4]  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Formal Letters, Q. No. 7.  
**Or,** Write a letter to your father for asking permission to go on a tour.  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Informal Letters, Q. No. 4.
- Q. 5.** Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 250 words : [5]  
(i) Environmental Pollution.  
(ii) Advantages of Science.  
(iii) Importance of Games and sports.  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Essay Writing.  
**Or,** Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "Advantages of Small Family".  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Article Writing.



Q. 6. Look at the visual input given below and produce a small description about it. [3]  
(in 75 words)



Ans. Refer to Section B, Writing Skills, Long Compositions, Picture Guided Composition, Q. No. 5.

**Section-C**

**(Grammar)**

Q. 7. Fill in the blanks choosing the correct options (any five) : [5]

(i) We ..... wear mask in crowded places. (should/may/ought)  
 (ii) Bhopal is larger ..... Gwalior. (from/to/than)  
 (iii) The earth ..... round the sun. (moving/moves/moved)  
 (iv) He is afraid ..... dogs. (from/of/to)  
 (v) My father is a ..... teacher. (retire/retiring/retired)  
 (vi) Arun is ..... tallest boy in the class. (a/an/the)

Ans. (i) should, (ii) than, (iii) moves, (iv) of, (v) retired, (vi) the.

Q. 8. Do as directed (any five) : [5]

- (i) Unless it rains, we shall go to school. (Rewrite the sentence using 'if' in place of 'Unless')
- (ii) Birds migrate in winter. (Rewrite the sentence in "Past continuous")
- (iii) He did not go to school. He was ill. (Combine the sentences using "because")
- (iv) He teaches Hindi. (Change the voice)
- (v) He is too weak to go school. (Rewrite the sentence using "So ..... that")
- (vi) My mother is cooking food. (Make interrogative)

Ans. (i) If it does not rain, we shall go to school.  
 (ii) Birds were migrating in winter.  
 (iii) He did not go to school because he was ill.  
 (iv) Hindi is taught by him.  
 (v) He is so weak that he cannot go school.  
 (vi) Is my mother cooking food ?

**Section-D**

**(Text-books)**

Q. 9. Choose the correct answers : [4]

Questions :

- (i) What are the bakers known as in Goa :  
 (a) Pader (b) Portugesc (c) Pekar (d) Haker.

- (ii) The pilot was flying from ..... to ..... :  
 (a) England, Paris (b) France, England  
 (c) France, India (d) India, France.

- (iii) Who read the letters sent by Lencho :  
 (a) His wife (b) The Postmaster (c) The God (d) His son.

- (iv) Who was the daughter of Nelson Mandela :  
 (a) Nancy (b) Maria (c) Zenani (d) Lucy.

Ans. (i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (b), (iv) (c).

- Q. 10. (a) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions given below it. [3]  
 "The house ..... the only one in the entire valley .....  
 the sky towards the north-east".

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-1, Extract-1.

- (b) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions.

"But if it had to Perish ..... Also would suffice". [3]

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-2, Extract-2.

- Q. 11. Answer the following questions : (any six) [12]

- (i) What did Lencho hope for ?

Ans. Refer to Section D Textual Exercises, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-1, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

- (ii) Why were the two poems sung ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 7.

- (iii) How did the mother seagull force the young seagull to fly ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-3(A), S.A.T. Q.No. 8.

- (iv) What made the woman in the control centre look at the narrator strangely ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-3(B), S.A.T. Q.No. 4.

- (v) Why does Anne want to keep a diary ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, S.A.T. Q.No. 2.

- (vi) What are the elders in Goa nostalgic about ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-5, S.A.T. Q.No. 1.

- (vii) Why was the Otter named "Maxwell's otter" ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-6, S.A.T. Q.No. 4.

- (viii) Why did Kisa Goutami go to Buddha ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 10.

- Q. 12. Answer the following questions in 30 words (any two) : [4]

- (i) What are the two negative powers that can destroy the world ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-2, S. A.T.Q. No. 7.

- (ii) How does the tiger move about in the cage ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-3, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

- (iii) What does "in the world of possessions" means ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-5, S.A.T.Q. No. 2.



- Q. 13. Answer the following questions (30 words) any two : [4]
- (i) How does Dr. Harriot treat Tricky ?  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Prose Section, Lesson-1, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.
- (ii) Why was it difficult for Hari Singh to rob Anil ?  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Prose Section, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 12.
- (iii) Why had Fowler wanted to meet Ausable ?  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Prose Section, Lesson-3, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.
- Q. 14. Answer any one of the following questions (75 words) : [3]
- (i) How did Mandelas "Hunger for Freedom" change his life ?  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 18.
- Or, Describe the importance of the baker in the Goan Villages.  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-5, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.
- Q. 15. Answer any one of the following questions (30 words) : [3]
- (i) Write the summary and central idea of the poem "The Ball Poem".  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-5, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.
- Or, What message does Adrienne Rich want to convey through the poem, "The Trees".  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-7, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.
- Q. 16. Answer any one of the following questions (30 words) : [3]
- (i) How did Ebright's mother help him becoming a scientist ?  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-6, L.A.T.Q. No. 5.
- Or, Write a character sketch of Matilda.  
 Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-7, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

## MODEL QUESTION PAPER SET-II

Instructions : Same as before.

### Section-A

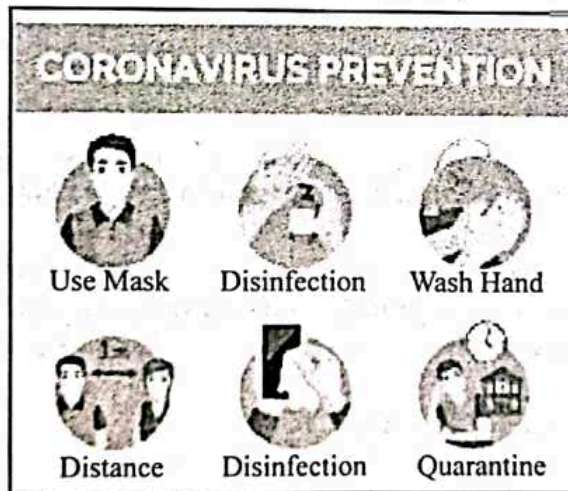
#### (Reading)

- Q. 1. Read the following passage carefully and answer the question given below :  
 "Sister Nivedita went on ..... regeneration of India".
- Ans. Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen Passages, 1. Factual Passages, Passage No. 10.
- Q. 2. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below :  
 "Desertification can be ..... arid and semi-arid zones".
- Ans. Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen Passages, 1. Factual Passages, Passage No. 9.

**Section-B**

**(Writing)**

- Q. 3.** Read the following passage carefully and answer the following questions :  
 "It is an admitted fact that ..... united nation is strong".
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, (I) Note Making and Summarizing, Passage No. 3.
- Q. 4.** You are Rashika Sharma, a student of class X, residing in Geeta Bhavan area of Jabalpur. In your area people use loud speakers which troubles many people. Write a letter to the S.P. of the city requesting him to put a ban on the use of loud speakers.
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Formal Letters, Q. No. 2.  
**Or,** Write a letter to your friend congratulating him on his brilliant success in the High School Examination.
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Informal Letters, Q. No. 3.
- Q. 5.** Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 250 words :
- (i) Importance of Trees/forest.
  - (ii) My Hobby.
  - (iii) An Indian Festival.
  - (iv) Value of Games and Sports.
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Essay Writing.  
**Or,** Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "Advantages of Save Water".
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Paragraph Writing, Q. No. 4.
- Q. 6.** Look at the visual input given below and produce a small description about it. (in 75 words)



- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Picture Guided Composition, Q. No. 3.

**Section-C**

**(Grammar)**

- Q. 7.** Fill in the blanks (any five) :
- (i) He avoids ..... to strangers. (talk/talked/talking)
  - (ii) He is ..... hour late. (a/an/the)
  - (iii) I ..... buy that mobile if I had money. (would/would have/could)



- (iv) He always ..... on time. (come/coming/comes)  
 (v) He wanted to ..... an engineer. (become/becomes/becoming)  
 (vi) No sooner had he seen the cobra ..... he ran away. (than/then/when)  
 (vii) She gave me ..... useful hints. (some/any/much)

Ans. (i) talking, (ii) an, (iii) would have, (iv) comes, (v) become, (vi) than, (vii) some.

**Q. 8. Do as directed (any five) :**

- (i) Children are making toys. (Change the voice)  
 (ii) She shut the door. (Change into negative)  
 (iii) He is too poor to pay his fees. (Rewrite using "so ..... that")  
 (iv) Unless you work hard, you won't pass. (Use 'if' in place of 'Unless')  
 (v) The tall man is a doctor. The tall man is talking to my father.

(Combine the sentences using 'who')

- (vi) Delhi is larger than Bhopal. (Rewrite using positive degree of Adjective)

- Ans. (i) Toys are being made by children.  
 (ii) She did not shut the door.  
 (iii) He is so poor that he can not pay his fees.  
 (iv) If you do not work hard, you won't pass.  
 (v) The tall man who is talking to my father is a doctor.  
 (vi) Bhopal is not as large as Delhi.

### Section-D

#### (Text-book)

**Q. 9. Choose the correct answer :**

**Questions :**

- (i) **Which party did Mandela join :**  
 (a) National African Party (b) Indian National Congress  
 (c) Universal Party (d) African National Congress.
- (ii) **What were the seagull's siblings doing around him :**  
 (a) Flying (b) Enjoying  
 (c) Sleeping (d) Swimming.
- (iii) **What was the name of the plane flown by the pilot :**  
 (a) Airbus (b) Dakota  
 (c) Boeing (d) None.
- (iv) **What did Mijbil do to the box :**  
 (a) Made it wet (b) Tone the lining of the box  
 (c) Over turned it (d) All of these.

Ans. (i) (d), (ii) (a), (iii) (b), (iv) (b).

**Q. 10. (a) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions given below it.**

"I knew that the oppressor must be liberated just as .....  
 alike are robbed of their humanity".

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-2, Extract-9.

**(b) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions.**

If ever you should ..... is the Asian Lion".

Ans. Refer to Section D, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-4, Extract-1.

**Q. 11. Answer the following questions in 30 words (any six) :**

(i) **Who was Lencho ? What were his problems ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-1, S.A.T.Q. No. 13.

(ii) **What does Mandela thank the international Leaders for ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 4.

(iii) **I'll take the risk ! What is the risk ? Why does the narrator take it ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-3(I), S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

(iv) **How did Anne Justify her being a chatter-box in her essay ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, S.A.T.Q. No. 7.

(v) **Is Bread an important part of Goan life ? How do you know this ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-5(I), S.A.T.Q. No. 7.

(vi) **What is the chinese legend about the discovery of tea leaves ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-5(III), S.A.T.Q. No. 6.

(vii) **Why did Lomov go to the house of Chubukov ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-9, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

**Q. 12. Answer any two of the following questions (30 words) :**

(i) **Where has the boy lost his ball ? How does the loss affect him ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-5, S.A.T.Q. No. 6.

(ii) **Is Amanda an orphan ? Why does she say so ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 4.

(iii) **What does the poet compare the branches to ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-7, S.A.T.Q. No. 1(ii).

**Q. 13. Answer any two of the following questions in 30 words (any two) :**

(i) **How did the invisible man become visible ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-5, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

(ii) **How did a book become a turning point in Richard's life ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

(iii) **Why is Bholi's father worried about her ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**Q. 14. Write a character sketch of Natalya.**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-9, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**Or, How did Valli plan her journey ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-7, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.



- Q. 15. How did custard prove that he was not a coward ?**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-9, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.  
**Or, How is the fog like a cat ? What three things suggest this ?**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-8, L.A.T.Q. No. 4.
- Q. 16. Discuss the role of the teacher in moulding the personality of Bholi.**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-8, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.  
**Or, "Horace Danby is a peculiar character". Discuss.**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-4, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

## EXPECTED QUESTION PAPER SET-I

Instructions : Same as before.

### Section-A

#### (Reading)

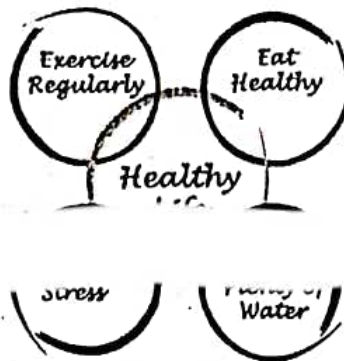
- Q. 1. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below :  
 "Time management always remains ..... gift of God to us".**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen Passages, 1. Factual Passages, Passage No. 6.
- Q. 2. Read the following passage carefully and answer the options given below :  
 "The Ganga is the longest ..... to keep it pure and flowing".**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen Passages, 1. Factual Passages, Passage No. 4.

### Section-B

#### (Writing)

- Q. 3. Read the following passage carefully and answer the following questions :  
 "The heart is one of the ..... battery-operated pace makers".**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skills, I. Note Making and Summarizing, Passage No. 13 (Extra).
- Q. 4. You are Naveen Sharma, studying in Govt. Hr. Sec. School, Rewa. Write an application to your Principal for issuing you books from the school Book-Bank.**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skills, II. Letter Writing, Formal Letters, Q. No. 10.  
**Or, Write a letter to your father telling him about your study.**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skills, II. Letter Writing, Informal Letters, Q. No. 6.
- Q. 5. Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 250 words :**  
 (i) An Indian Festival.  
 (ii) Importance of Games and sports.  
 (iii) Science : A Boon or a curse.  
 (iv) Why should we plant trees.
- Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Essay Writing.  
**Or, Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "Importance of English".**  
**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Paragraph Writing.

- Q. 6. Look at the visual input given below and produce a small description about it. (in 75 words) (How can we keep ourselves fit and healthy)



Ans. Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Long Compositions, Picture Guided Composition, Q.No. 4.

### Section-C

#### (Grammar)

- Q. 7. Fill in the blanks (any five) :

- (i) It had been ..... since morning. (rain/raining/rained)  
 (ii) My father is ..... dentist. (a/an/the)  
 (iii) When I was young, I ..... climb trees. (can/could/may)  
 (iv) I prefer coffee ..... tea. (from/to/than)  
 (v) How ..... sugar do you take in tea? (much/many/any)  
 (vi) He was punished for ..... (steal/stole/stealing)

Ans. (i) raining, (ii) a, (iii) could, (iv) to, (v) much, (vi) stealing.

- Q. 8. Do as directed : (any five)

- (i) She always speaks the truth. (Change into Negative)  
 (ii) Hobby/my/games/playing/is. (Rearrange the words to make a meaningful sentence)  
 (iii) They did their work. (Make negative)  
 (iv) Bali Ram is my best friend. (Frame a question beginning with "who")  
 (v) My friend will help you. He is very kind. (Combine the sentences with "because")  
 (vi) Radha sings a song. (Change into past continuous tense)

- Ans. (i) She never speaks the truth.  
 (ii) Playing games is my hobby  
 Or, My hobby is playing games.  
 (iii) They did not do their work.  
 (iv) Who is your best friend?  
 (v) My friend will help you because he is very kind..  
 (vi) Radha was singing a song.

### Section-D

#### (Text-book)

- Q. 9. Choose the correct answer :

Questions :

- (i) What is Assam popularly known as :  
 (a) Tea country (b) Coffee country  
 (c) Green country (d) Plantation country.



- (ii) What was the name given to the Otter :  
 (a) Major (b) Mijbil (c) Mad (d) Majhis.
- (iii) Which seed did Buddha ask kisa to bring :  
 (a) Pumpkin seeds (b) Mustard seed  
 (c) Sunflower seeds (d) Sesame seeds.
- (iv) A man who takes away freedom of another man is :  
 (a) Rude (b) A prisoner of hatred  
 (c) Criminal (d) Innocent.

Ans. (i) (a), (ii) (b), (iii) (b), (iv) (b).

Q. 10. (a) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions given below it.

“The fare was thirty paise ..... about two forty-five”.

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-9, Extract-3.

(b) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions.

“Now the name, the little ..... and she called him custard”.

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-10, Extract-2.

Q. 11. Answer the following questions in 30 words (any six) :

(i) Why did Anne think she could confide more in her diary than in people ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

(ii) Why was Rajvir excited to see the tea garden?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-5 (III), S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

(iii) What kind of a teacher was Mr. Keesing ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, S.A.T.Q. No. 18.

(iv) Why did Kisa Gotami go to Buddha ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 10.

(v) What game had Mij invented ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 8.

(vi) What was valli's favourite past time ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-7, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

(vii) What is the ailment that Lomov is suffering from ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-9, S.A.T.Q. No. 4.

Q. 12. Answer any two of the following questions (30 words) :

(i) How does the tiger move about in the cage ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-3, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

(ii) What could Amanda do if she were a mermaid ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

(iii) What are two negative powers that can destroy the world ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 7.

**Q. 13. Answer any two of the following questions (30 words) :**

**(i) Why was Mrs. Pumphrey worried about Trick ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-1, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**(ii) Why was the invisible man wandering in the streets ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-5, S.A.T.Q. No. 2.

**(iii) Why was Twentieth century called the "Era of the Books" ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-9, S.A.T.Q. No. 4.

**Q. 14. Explain the irony of Lencho calling the postal Employees "a bunch of crooks" ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-1, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**Or, How did Kisa Gotami learn that death is a fact of life ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-8, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

**Q. 15. What is the message of the poem 'Fire and Ice' ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-2, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**Or, What message does Adrienne Rich want to convey through the poem, 'The Trees' ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-7, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

**Q. 16. Describe how Matilda's ambition were the cause of her troubles ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-7, L.A.T.Q. No. 1.

**Or, How did Bholi, the simpleton become Sulekha, a girl aware of her rights and the way to use them ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-8, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

## EXPECTED QUESTION PAPER SET-II

**Instructions :** Same as before.

### Section-A

#### (Reading)

**Q. 1. Read the passage carefully and answer the following question :**

**"Garbage is a great environmental ..... Such organic waste.**

**Ans.** Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen passages, 1. Factual passages, Passage No. 1.

**Q. 2. Read the passage carefully and answer the question given below :**

**"Once on a lonely Island in the sea, there lived three people .....  
raise a storm in the sea or make thunder in the air.**

**Ans.** Refer to Section A, Reading Skill, Unseen passages, 2. Discursive passages, Passage No. 1.



### Section-B

#### (Writing)

**Q. 3.** Read the following passage and make notes on it. Also give a suitable title.  
 "Self-reliance is the pilgrim's staff ..... on either side".

**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Note Making and Summarising, Passage No. 6.

**Q. 4.** You are Ramlal Tripathi, a resident of 36, Sindhi colony Indore. Write a letter to the postmaster of G.P.O., Indore complaining about non-delivery of a registered post parcel.

**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Formal Letters, Q. No. 3.

**Or,** You are Shekhar Kapoor living at 122 C Mayur vihar, Bhopal. Write a letter to your friend Sumect to attend your Birthday party.

**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, II. Letter Writing, Informal Letters, Q. No. 5.

**Q. 5.** Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 250 words :

(a) Science : A good servant but a bad master.

(b) Problem of Pollution.

(c) Importance of Games in student life.

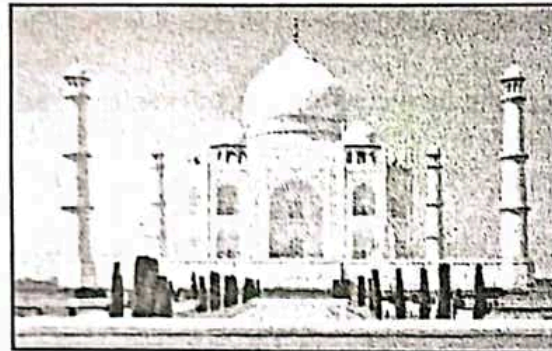
(d) Electricity in life.

**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, (III) Long Composition, Essay Writing,

**Or,** Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "Online Education".

**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, (III) Long Composition, Paragraph Writing 3.

**Q. 6.** Look at the visual input given below and write a small paragraph in about 75 words :



**Ans.** Refer to Section B, Writing Skill, Picture Guided Compositions, Q. No. 7.

### Section-C

#### (Grammar)

**Q. 7.** Fill in the blanks with the appropriate options given in the bracket : (Any five)

(i) There is not ..... milk in the pot. (some/any/much)

(ii) His sister is ..... S.D.O. in forest department. (a/an/the)

(iii) Kalidas has ..... many plays. (write/wrote/written/writing)

(iv) She prefers coffee ..... tea. (than/to/from)

(v) Work hard ..... you will fail. (but/or/and)

(vi) You ..... respect your teachers. (must/may/can)

**Ans.** (i) much, (ii) an, (iii) written, (iv) to, (v) or, (vi) must.

**Q. 8. Do as directed : (any five)**

- (i) She won the first prize. (Change into negative)  
 (ii) Unless he runs fast, he will miss the train. (Use 'if' in place of 'unless')  
 (iii) He is too poor to pay his fee. (Rewrite the sentence using 'so ..... that')  
 (iv) The teacher said, "Open your books". (Change narration)  
 (v) Radha is making kites. (Change the voice)  
 (vi) Mohan will write a letter. (Change into past perfect tense)

- Ans.** (i) She did not win the first prize.  
 (ii) If he does not run fast, he will miss the train.  
 (iii) He is so poor that he can not pay his fee.  
 (iv) The teacher ordered to open our books.  
 (v) Kites are being made by Radha.  
 (vi) Mohan had written a letter.

**Section-D**

**(Text-book)**

**Q. 9. Choose the correct options :**

- (i) **Where does the ball go :**  
 (a) In bushes (b) In water (c) On the roof (d) In jungle.  
 (ii) **Who passed near the water hole :**  
 (a) Elephant (b) Buffalo (c) Deer (d) None.  
 (iii) **According to Amanda, Freedom is :**  
 (a) Sour (b) Sweet (c) Bitter (d) All of these.  
 (iv) **What were Mij's favourite toys :**  
 (a) Toy car (b) Marbles (c) Soil (d) None of these.

**Ans.** (i) (b), (ii) (c), (iii) (b), (iv) (b).

**Q. 10. Read the following extract and answer the questions given below them :**

(A) "Writing in a diary is really ..... off my chest".

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, Extract No. 1.

(B) "But he's locked in a concrete cell ..... visitors".

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-3, Extract No. 4.

**Q. 11. Answer the following questions in 30 words (any six) :**

(i) **How did the mother seagull force the young seagull to fly ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-3, S.A.T.Q. No. 8.

(ii) **Why did Lencho say that the raindrops were like "new coins" ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-1, S.A.T.Q. No. 2.

(iii) **How was Mijbil transported to England ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 5.

(iv) **What twin obligations does Mandela mention ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 11.

(v) **Why does the conductor call "valli" madam ?**

**Ans.** Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-7, S.A.T.Q. No. 5.



(vi) Why does Anne want to keep a diary ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-4, S.A.T.Q. No. 2.

(vii) According to Buddha, how can one obtain peace of mind ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [A] Prose Section, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 14.

**Q. 12. Answer any two of the following questions (30 words) :**

(i) What does the poet compare the branches to ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-7, S.A.T.Q. No. 1 (ii).

(ii) How does Amanda describe her life as an orphan ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 8.

(iii) What is the child's reaction on losing the ball ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, First Flight, [B] Poetry Section, Poem-5, S.A.T.Q. No. 6.

**Q. 13. Answer any two of the following questions (30 words) :**

(i) Does Anil realize that he has been robbed ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-2, S.A.T.Q. No. 2.

(ii) How did Richard Ebright's mother help him to become a scientist ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-6, S.A.T.Q. No. 1.

(iii) Why does Bholi's marriage not take place ?

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 6.

**Q. 14. Describe the early life of Gautam Buddha.**

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] First Flight, Prose Section, Lesson-8, S.A.T.Q. No. 7.

*Or, How does the marriage finally take place ?*

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] First Flight, Prose Section, Lesson-9, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

**Q. 15. What does the young boy say to Anne Gregory ?**

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] First Flight, Poetry Section, Lesson-10, S.A.T.Q. No. 3.

*Or, Do you know the story of "Rapunzel" ? Why does Amanda want to be Rapunzel ?*

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, [A] First Flight, Poetry Section, Lesson-6, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

**Q. 16. Who was Max ? Why did he enter Ausable's room ? Did he succeed in his plan ?**

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-3, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

*Or, Compare and contrast the characters of Noodle and Think-Tank.*

Ans. Refer to Section D, Textual Exercises, Footprints Without Feet, Lesson-9, L.A.T.Q. No. 2.

## UNSEEN PASSAGES

### Useful Hints for Reading Comprehension

**Reading :** In this section student's ability of reading the passage to understand, is tested through various questions. It has two passages and carries 20 marks.

**(A) Types of passages :** The two passages are :

**(i) A factual passage (300-350 words) :** This passage is informative in nature and has eight direct questions of objective nature. It may include a description, instructions or a report which helps the reader to develop a clear idea of the subject discussed.

**(ii) A discursive passage (350-400 words) :** A discursive passage may include argumentative, interpretative or persuasive opinions student is required to form conclusions by reasoning and clear understanding. The passage carries 12 marks and has four short answer questions of 2 marks each and four objective questions based on vocabulary. The vocabulary questions contain word meaning, word formation, antonyms and synonyms.

The section on reading actually is your test of how much of the language you have mastered. As such, it is an application based question.

**(B) How to attempt reading comprehension :**

**(i)** Read the questions before reading the passage. In this way you will be able to find the part/sentence containing the answer.

**(ii)** If the title is given, read it twice. It may contain hints to some of the answers.

**(iii)** Read the beginning and end of the passage carefully. It may contain important hints.

**(iv)** Answer the question in the same tense as that of the question.

**(v)** Always write the answer in a complete sentence.

Now, study the solved examples to see the above theory in practice.

### 1. FACTUAL PASSAGES

Read the following passages and answer the questions given below it :

#### Passage 1

Garbage is a great environmental hazard. It comes from various sources used paper, Tiffin packing, plastic bags, ice-cream wrappers, bottle caps, fallen leaves from trees and many more. Garbage makes the premises, ugly, unkempt and breeds diseases. A lot of trash that is thrown away contains material that can be recycled and reused such as paper, metals and glass which can be sent to the nearest recycling centre or disposed off to the junk dealer. It also contains organic matters such as leaves which can enrich soil fertility. A compost pit can be made at a convenient location where the refuse can be placed with layers of soil and an occasional sprinkling of water. This would help decomposition to make valuable fertilizer. This would also prevent pollution that is usually caused by burning such organic waste.

(M.P. 2022)

**Questions :**

1. Leaves can enrich ..... fertility.

(a) Water

(b) Soil

(c) Air

(d) Human body.

2. Give a great environmental hazard :

(a) Water pollution

(b) Air pollution

(c) Garbage

(d) All of these.



3. Garbage makes premises :  
 (a) Clean (b) Ugly (c) Beautiful (d) Dry.
  4. We can dispose garbage to a :  
 (a) Grocer (b) Book seller (c) Vendor (d) Junk dealer.
  5. Garbage can be reused by :  
 (a) Re-selling (b) Recycling (c) Repairing (d) Renovating.
  6. The main sources of Garbage in present conditions are :  
 (a) Household things (b) Plots and other materials  
 (c) Water and liquid (d) Cotton and clothes.
  7. The noun form of the word 'recycled' is :  
 (a) Recycle (b) Recycling (c) Recyclingly (d) To recycled.
  8. Give the meaning of the word 'nearest' :  
 (a) Closest (b) Closely (c) Far (d) Far away.
- Ans. 1. (b), 2. (c), 3. (b), 4. (d), 5. (b). 6. (a), 7. (b), 8. (a).

### Passage 2

Papaya is one of the healthiest fruits. It has a number of properties. The fruit originated in Southern Mexico and neighbouring Central America. It is not easily available in every tropical and sub-tropical country. It is a popular fruit easily available everywhere in India. Papaya is very good for digestion. It also cures skin irritation and sunburns. It can be eaten as a salad or taken as milkshake. Modern science confirms that papaya can contribute much to the health cause. It contains a protein digesting enzyme in the milky juice similar to pepsin. It is said to be powerful enough to digest 200 times its weight in protein. It helps the body in getting the maximum nutrition from food. Papain in raw papaya makes up for the deficiency of gastric juice. It controls excess of mucus in the stomach and checks intestinal irritation. Thus, it is useful in habitual constipation. Interestingly, the juice of the papaya seeds is also good in the control of above mentioned ailments. In India papaya is grown everywhere and is easily available. It is cheaper compared to other fruits and within reach of the poor also.

#### Questions :

1. The papaya first originated in :  
 (a) Central Europe and Africa (b) Southern Mexico and Central America  
 (c) Central Asia (d) India.
  2. Papaya is not useful for :  
 (a) Skin irritation (b) Digestion (c) Cough and cold (d) Constipation.
  3. Besides the fruit itself, the ..... of the papaya is/are also useful :  
 (a) Leaves (b) Seeds (c) Skin (d) All of these.
  4. The enzyme which helps in the digestion of protein is present in ..... of papaya :  
 (a) Latex (b) Seed (c) Skin (d) None of these.
  5. What is useful in case of gastric juice deficiency :  
 (a) Pepsin (b) Papain (c) Mucus (d) All of these.
- Ans. 1. (b), 2. (c), 3.(b), 4. (a), 5. (b).

### Passage 3

The great Pyramid at Giza is one of the world's most amazing landmarks. Rising high above the Sahara Desert in the Giza region of northern Egypt, the great pyramid stands some 450 feet into the burning desert sky and occupies an area of 13 acres. The rough climate of the Sahara has actually caused the pyramid to shrink 30 feet from its original height. This pyramid was such an amazing feat of engineering, then it remained the tallest structure in the



world for over 3,800 years ! The entire pyramid was originally faced with polished lime stone to make it shine brilliantly in the sun. Most Egyptologists, scientists who study ancient Egypt, agree that the Great pyramid was built around 2560 BC, a little more than 4,500 years ago. It took tens of thousands of workers twenty years to build. The pyramid contains over two million stone blocks. Although most of the block's weigh two or three tons, some weigh upto 80 tons ! The great pyramid of Giza was ordered built by the Pharaoh Khufu as a magnificent tomb. His Vizier (advisor) Hemon is credited with being the pyramid's architect. Khufu's pyramid is actually part of a complex of pyramids that includes the Pyramid of Khafre, the smaller Pyramid of Menkaure, a variety of smaller pyramids and structures, and the great Sphinx. The great pyramid of Giza is the last remaining of the Seven Wonders of the world.

**Questions :**

1. Which of these does not house the Great Pyramid :  
 (a) Southern Egypt (b) Northern Egypt  
 (c) Giza (d) Sahara Desert.
  2. How many stone blocks constitute the Pyramid :  
 (a) More than two million (b) Less than two million  
 (c) More than one billion (d) Less than two billion.
  3. Most of the blocks in the pyramid weigh about ..... tons :  
 (a) Eighty (b) Two or three (c) five (d) 4,500.
  4. Which of the following definitions best describes the meaning of "complex" in the passage :  
 (a) Materials (b) Group (c) Pyramid (d) Army.
  5. Which of the following is false :  
 (a) Khufu was Hemon's vizier and architect.  
 (b) The pyramid took tens of thousands of workers about twenty years to complete it.  
 (c) The great pyramid is the last of the Seven Wonders of the world.  
 (d) Hemon was Khufu's vizier and architect.
- Ans. 1. (b), 2. (a), 3.(b), 4. (b), 5. (a).

**Passage 4**

The Ganga is the longest river of India. It emerges from the Gangotri glacier in Uttarakhand. The river starts with the name Ganga from Devprayag where Bhagirathi and Alaknanda rivers merge. The Ganga is home to 150 species of fish and aquatic animals like the Ghariyal. It flows through Uttarakhand, Uttar-pradesh, Bihar and West Bengal and ends at Bangladesh merging with the Bay of Bengal. Ganga is the holiest river of India. On its banks are religious places like Varanasi, Sangam, Har ki Pauri, Haridwar, Rishikesh. Pilgrims from all over India come to visit these places. Other big cities on the bank of the holy river are Patna, Kanpur, Jajmau, Bali, Allahabad, Bhagalpur, Behrampur and Kolkata. The part of India, through which the Ganga flows is called North Indian plain. It has the most densely populated areas of India with states of U.P. and Bihar as its part. The total population is above 40 crores, about 1/3 rd of the population of India. The plain is made up of fertile alluvium. Rice, wheat, maize, sugarcane, and cotton are grown here and it is one of the most intensely farmed areas of the world. Besides the rivers, the ground water sources are also in plenty. The only problem is that because of its religious importance, population and industries, the Ganga called mother Ganga by Hindus is also a very polluted river. We need to take action to keep it pure and flowing.



## Questions :

- The river Ganga does not flow through :  
(a) U.P. (b) Rajasthan (c) Bihar (d) Uttarakhand.
- The aquatic animal found in Ganga is :  
(a) Rhino (b) Crocodile (c) Lion (d) Gharial.
- Which of the following is not situated on the river Ganga :  
(a) Varanasi (b) Omkareshwar (c) Rishikesh (d) Patna.
- The North Indian plain is home to about ..... Indians :  
(a) 4 crore (b) One crore (c) 40 crores (d) 135 crore.
- Which of these is not grown in the North Indian plain :  
(a) Sugarcane (b) Rice (c) Wheat (d) Banana.

Ans. 1. (b), 2. (d), 3.(b), 4. (c), 5. (d).

### Passage 5

Cancer is today the second leading cause of deaths globally after cardiovascular diseases. The deaths due to cancer increased from 12% in 1990 to 15% in 2013. During the same period, the cases in India almost doubled. Deaths from cancer have increased by 60% according to a report.

“Even if we adjust for the rise in population in India during the period, the new cancer cases have increased by 30% and deaths by 10% per unit population” says Lalit Dandota, Professor at the Public Health foundation of India and institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation.

In 2013, there were 14 million new cases registered globally and 8.2 million deaths. The report is based on a global study of 28 cancer groups in 188 countries. The report suggests that new cases of all types of cancer are rising in countries globally-regardless of income but the death rates are falling in many countries primarily due to its prevention and treatment. However, it says that there is a threat of increasing incidence of breast cancer is highest in India as well as globally but the maximum number of deaths occur due to stomach cancer. Globally, stomach cancer is the second most common cause of death.

## Questions :

- The disease causing maximum deaths globally is :  
(a) Cardiovascular diseases (b) Stomach cancer  
(c) Breast cancer (d) None of these .
- The death rates from cancer are coming down in many countries due to :  
(a) Prevention (b) Treatment  
(c) Both prevention and proper treatment (d) None of these.
- In India maximum number of cancer deaths are due to :  
(a) Breast cancer (b) Stomach cancer  
(c) Lung cancer (d) None of these.
- The cancer cases of all types irrespective of income are :  
(a) Rising (b) Falling  
(c) At a standstill (d) Can't say.
- According to the report deaths due to cancer in India have risen by :  
(a) 60% (b) 10% (c) 30% (d) 100%.

Ans. 1. (a), 2. (c), 3. (b), 4. (a), 5. (a).

### Passage 6

Time management always remains a critical success factor. One who wastes his boyhood, cannot build up character and has to suffer its consequences. If a student neglects his studies from day to day, no amount of hard work just before the examination will get him through.

Those who understand the importance of time practise punctuality in life. A punctual person, one who uses his time cautiously gets success in life. Successful men in all spheres of life are people who made proper use of every moment. The most prosperous nations too are those whose people do not waste their time.

An unpunctual man cannot finish his own duties and incurs the displeasure of others. In the military field delay by a few minutes may change the destiny of a nation. It is true that no one can forecast future. There are lots of things which are not under our control. Economical and financial situations are uncertain.

Even if the future is uncertain, hard work done today will increase the probability of tomorrow. If we put off things and become indolent we will surely invite our ruin. During an emergency, the disaster management people act fast. All successful people have made the best use of time. We too must make the best use of this invaluable gift of God to us.

#### Questions :

- If we waste our boyhood we ..... :**
  - Can build up our character
  - Cannot build up our character
  - Can pass the examination
  - Cannot pass the examination.
- A punctual person :**
  - Always uses his time cautiously
  - Does not use his time cautiously
  - Sometimes uses his time cautiously
  - All of these.
- People of a prosperous nation :**
  - Always waste their time cautiously
  - Tend to pass time in gossiping
  - Never waste their time
  - Never use time cautiously.
- If you don't finish your duties properly you may :**
  - Incur the displeasure of others
  - Incur the happiness of others
  - Help the nation to progress
  - All of these.
- Delay in action by military of a nation can :**
  - Bring success to military
  - Bring failure in an operation
  - Change the destiny of a nation
  - Both (b) and (c).

**Ans.** 1. (b), 2. (a), 3. (c), 4. (a), 5. (c).

### Passage 7

Yoga is the ancient system to keep a person fit in body and mind. It is basically a system of self-treatment. According to the yogic view, diseases, disorders and ailments are the result of some faulty way of living, bad habits, lack of proper knowledge and unsuitable food. The diseases are thus the resultant state of a sort of prolonged malfunctioning of the body system. Since the root cause of a disease lies in the mistakes of the individual himself. The yoga expert shows only the path and works so more than a counsellor. The yogic practice of treatment comprises three steps namely diet, proper yogic practice and proper knowledge of things about the self.

#### Questions :

- The root cause of disease lies in ..... :**
  - Mistakes of physician
  - Mistakes of the individual
  - Mistakes of others.



2. The word 'prolonged' means :  
 (a) New (b) Very old (c) None.
- Or, Find out a word from the passage which means 'very old'.
3. The main causes of diseases and disorders are :  
 (a) Faulty way of living,  
 (b) Bad habits,  
 (c) unsuitable food  
 (d) All the above.
4. A Yoga expert does the work as a counseller. (True/False)
5. Yoga is an ancient system to ..... (Fill in the blank)
- Ans. 1. (a), 2. (b), 3. All the above, 4. True, 5. To keep a person fit in body and mind.

### Passage 8

City children suffer from a great disability. They have little contact with nature. They do not know the joys of living in the open air. In cities, there is no space to live. So one storey is piled upon another. Their lives are so artificial that don't enjoy the benefit of seeing the stars at night. They buy flower pots and put paper flowers or plastic flowers in them. They hang pictures of sun-rise or sun-set on the walls. Wherever one turns, one finds artificial lights during the day as well as in the night. They have lost even darkness of night which is given to man for peace and quiet thought. So the task before education is to change the whole system of values that are current in our cities.

#### Questions :

1. Which disability do the city children suffer from :  
 (a) They are weak.  
 (b) They can not play in the open.  
 (c) They have little contact with nature.
2. Find the opposite of the word 'natural' from the above passage :  
 (a) Beneficial (b) Artificial (c) Superficial.
3. Night is important for men :  
 (a) For peace and relaxation  
 (b) For doing marketing.  
 (c) For doing day work  
 (d) None of the above.
4. To task of education is to improve value system of cities. (True/False)
5. Only children donot have much contact ..... (Fill in the blank)
- Ans. 1. (c), 2. (b), 3. (a), 4. True, 5. With nature.

### Passage 9

Desertification can be called the creation of desert like conditions where none had existed earlier. It is the result of the uncertainty of weather and climate or mismanagement of land or in most cases the combination of both. Sahel faced such a condition. The cause was the large number of cattle grazing these before 1968, for fifteen years the place had a favourable monsoon. The shephards came with relatively large number of herds. Then came the dry years. People thought that it was a natural disaster. The idea that drought is an unexpected event has been used as an excuse for the failure in long range planning. People in semi-arid regions blame the climate for agricultural failure. In fact the reason is wrong population and agricultural policies.

We can combat desertification and deterioration if we find out the ecologically realistic carrying capacity for the range lands. There is a general agreement on this but it is difficult to put it into use. The carrying capacity depends on vegetation, rainfall, soil, surface and ground water and managerial skills. Here the land managers are confused and choose one of the methods. So the problem is not solved. It is important to gather more information about the variability of the climate. This will remove the obstacles in resolving the perennial problems of arid and semi-arid zones.

**Questions :**

1. Desertification is the result of :  
 (a) Uncertainty of weather and climate (b) Mismanagement of land  
 (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these.
  2. Sahel had a favourable monsoon :  
 (a) In 1968 (b) Before 1968 (c) After 1968 (d) All of these.
  3. The carrying capacity does not depend on :  
 (a) Rainfall (b) Vegetation (c) Soil (d) Weather forecast.
  4. In 1968 and later Sahel had :  
 (a) Too much rain (b) Too little rain (c) Average rain (d) None of these.
  5. The perennial problems of arid and semi-arid zones can be resolved by gathering more information about the variability of the climate. (True/False)
- Ans. 1. (c), 2. (b), 3. (d), 4. (b), 5. True.

**Passage 10**

Sister Nivedita went on lecture tours throughout India. From September 1902 to 1904 to arouse the national consciousness of the people. Her politics was of an aggressive type and she had no patience with the moderate politics of the petitioner type. She was friendly with the leaders of all schools of political thought like G.K. Gokhale, Bipin Chandra Pal and young revolutionaries like Taraknath Das. She attended the Benaras Congress in 1905 and wholeheartedly supported the Swadeshi Movement, both in principle and practice. In her own words, "In the Swadeshi Movement the Indian people have found an opportunity to make themselves respected by the whole world. For the world respects that which shows that it is to be feared, and the one thing that is feared by all is strong, intelligent and united action. The note of manliness and self help is sounded throughout the Swadeshi movement. Her great desire was to see the whole nation educated in national lines. She encouraged the study of science and helped Jagdish Chandra Bose in bringing to light his inventions and discoveries. She also felt that the rebirth of Indian art was essential for the regeneration of India.

**Questions :**

1. Sister Nivedita's politics was ..... :  
 (a) Moderate petitioner type (b) Aggressive type  
 (c) Neither moderate nor aggressive (d) Both moderate and aggressive.
2. The Benaras Congress was held in :  
 (a) 1902 (b) 1904 (c) 1905 (d) None of these.
3. She was friendly with :  
 (a) Bipin Chandra Pal (b) G.K. Gokhale  
 (c) Taraknath Das (d) All of these.
4. Sister Nivedita's great desire was :  
 (a) To see the nation educated in national lines  
 (b) Rebirth of Indian art  
 (c) Swadeshi movement's success  
 (d) All of these.



5. She felt that the Swadeshi Movement has the note of :

- (a) Being feared by all (b) Manliness and self help  
(c) United action (d) Being respected by all.

Ans. 1. (a), 2. (c), 3. (d), 4. (d), 5. (b).

### Passage 11

Discipline must be enforced early in life. Discipline at home makes for the future greatness of a boy. It forms his character and makes him a fit citizen. The child who is allowed to have his own way becomes way-ward. The child who is allowed all sorts of excesses like running about in the sun, exposing himself to cold, eating wholesome things, as a result will fall ill frequently. A child, whose habits have been disciplined and who has been taught to rise early, attend to his lessons properly, take physical exercises at the proper time and avoid things that are injurious will grow up to be a useful member of the society. The spoilt child who has been allowed to run his own course will show vice in younger days. His parents would wish that he had not been born at all. (M.P. 2022)

Questions :

- What does discipline do for a child ?  
(a) Forms character and makes him a fit citizen  
(b) Makes child dull  
(c) Makes him strong  
(d) Makes him way-ward.
- What evils does a child pick up when he is allowed to do what he likes ?  
(a) Make himself happy (b) Catch cold and fall ill  
(c) Develop good habits (d) Develop discipline in him.
- What are good habits ?  
(a) Running in the sun (b) Playing all the time  
(c) Avoid things that are injurious (d) Exposing himself to cold.
- Give a suitable title :  
(a) Importance of discipline (b) Running  
(c) Playing (d) Physical Exercises.
- What does 'Spoilt' mean ?  
(a) Greatness (b) Destroyed (c) Injurious (d) Disciplined.

Ans. 1. (a), 2. (b), 3. (c), 4. (a), 5. (b).

### Passage 12

There, once, was a stingy baker. A poor man would stand outside his bakery everyday, enjoyed the nice smell of baking bread. The baker was very angry at the poor man. He felt that anyone who smelled his delicious products should pay for the smell. So he took the poor man to the court.

The judge heard the baker's complaint patiently. Then he asked the poor man, "Do you have any money?"

The poor man searched his pocket and produced two small. "This is all the money I have," He said to the judge.

The judge took the coins from the poor man. The baker smiled and eagerly held out his hand.

But the judge did not give the baker the money. He only jingled the coins together. He then returned them to the poor man, saying, "Punishment should fit the crime. The price for the smell of bread shall be the sound of money." (M.P. 2023)

Questions :

Give a suitable title for the above passage :

- (a) kingdom of fools (b) Love begets love  
(c) There is a will, there is a way (d) Tit for tat.

3. Which word is the opposite of the word 'rick' >

- (a) Honest (b) stingy (c) Poor (d) judge.

4. The poor man stood outside the bakery ..... :

- (a) To buy bread (b) To eat bread  
(c) To enjoy the smell of baking bread (d) To steal bread

5. The baker took the poor man to ..... :

- (a) Court (b) Temple (c) Bakery (d) his home.

6. How many coins were found in poor man's pocket ?

- (a) Twenty (b) Two (c) Four (d) One.

Ans. 1. (a), 2. (c), 3. (c), 4. (a), 5. (b).

## 2. DISCURSIVE PASSAGES

Read the following passages and answer the questions given below it :

### Passage 1

Once on a lonely Island in the sea there lived three people, a wise old man named Prospero, his beautiful young daughter Miranda, and their servant Caliban. Prospero and Miranda had come to the Island twelve years ago. When Miranda was only a baby, she hardly remembered having seen any human face except her father's. As for Caliban he looked hardly human; he was more like a fish than a man.

Prospero had another servant, a magic spirit named Ariel, whom he commanded by means of his magic. Before Prospero's arrival lived on the island a witch called Sycorex; the ugly Caliban was her son. This witch had imprisoned Ariel in the heart of a pine tree and left him there when she died. Prospero found him and released him and he became Prospero's servant. Ariel carried out all Prospero's commands, whether it was to raise a storm in the sea or make thunder in the air.

Questions :

1. Miranda was the ..... of Prospero :

- (a) daughter (b) sister (c) wife

2. Prospero, Miranda, Ariel, and Caliban came to the lonely island ..... ago.

(Fill in the blank)

(True/False)

3. Ariel was the younger brother of Miranda.

(Fill in the blank)

4. Ariel carried out .....

5. Find out a word from the passage that means 'witch craft'.

Ans. (1) Daughter, (2) Twelve years, (3) False, (4) all Prospero's commands, (5) Magic.

### Passage 2

It is an admitted fact that union or cooperation is strength, disunion is weakness. A united family, a united community, a united nation is strong, but those who are disunited or split up into fractions or groups, are all weak. Take the case of a football or hockey team. If the members of the team play together and cooperate with one another, they will form a strong team.



But if each member plays his own game, they will surely be defeated, however strong the individual players may be. The same is true of an army. To win a battle, an army must work as one man. Napoleon's motto was, "Divide and conquer". He tried to split up the armies fighting against him. Then he would overcome them one by one. Divided they were weak. A united team, a united army, a united nation is strong. "United we stand, divided we fall."

**Questions :**

1. The factor that assures strength is ..... ,  
(a) Unity                      (b) Division              (c) Fractions              (d) None of these.
  2. If each member of a team plays his own game, the team will win not be defeated.  
(True/False)
  3. Napoleon's motto was .....  
(Fill in the blank)
  4. The moral of the passage is .....  
(Fill in the blank)
  5. The word opposite in meaning of "defeated".
- Ans.** 1. Unity assures strength.  
2. The team will surely be defeated.  
3. "Divide and Conquer".  
4. "United we stand, divided we fall."  
5. Victorious.

### Passage 3

Mobile phones have brought a revolution in the field of communication. Due to the easy access of smartphones communication has become effective and instant. Now people are able to convey their message all around the globe to their loved ones without spending hefty sums of money. Adults are fond of such gadgets and welcome and adopt the new technology easily. Further, young people have been able to broaden their minds and improve their skills by searching things on the internet. For instance, they use smartphones to look up new worlds they come across while reading. Most of the Universities have provision of online teaching and smartphones assist the students to complete their assignments on time.

In case of emergencies, mobile phones have been life savers for a lot of people. They can be of vital importance in preventing crimes by informing the police in time.

Nevertheless, for the young, the use of mobile phone can be like an addiction and they can misuse it. They are prone to getting involved in undesirable activities on the internet. This might have an adverse effect on their academic performance. So, young people should be monitored and told about the bad outcomes of using the mobile too much.

A major contributor to the popularity of mobile phones is the availability of prepaid or pay as you use services from phone shops and online stores. There are various plans according to the user's requirements. In India too, the data has become quite affordable and helped students tremendously in their studies specially during the lockdown period.

**Questions :**

- (A) On the basis of your reading of the passage answer the following questions :**
1. The two demerits of mobile phones are .....  
(Fill in the blank)
  2. Use in a sentences of your own : popularity or academic.
  3. Noun form of the verb revolve is .....
  4. Synonym of adverse is .....
  5. Antonym (opposite) of major is .....
- Ans. (A)** 1. Smartphones make our communication effective and instant. We can now convey messages to our loved ones around the globe without spending a lot of money.

2. (a) Youngsters waste too much time in mobile phones.  
(b) They get undesirable activities in the internet.
- (B) 1. (a) Popularity : The popularity of a leader helps him/her to win an election.  
(b) Academic : The academic performance is judged by written and oral examinations.
2. Revolution
3. Worst
4. Minor.

### Passage 4

Mary was blind at birth. Doctors during those years had been unable to do anything to correct the situation and although her parents lived in anguish, not being able to see was normal for her. After years of training to live in a dark world, Mary got a job and moved into her own flat. Several years later the doctors she occasionally visited for check-ups told her that a new technique had been found. This technique could restore her sight. One would think that Mary would have jumped at the possibility to see, but actually she was not at all happy about this situation. She had never seen anything before. She had established a life for herself in a world without sight and the thought of changing this lifestyle was frightening. She was more frightened of seeing than of not.

#### Questions :

1. One who can not see is called :  
(a) Deaf                                      (b) Dumb                                      (c) Lame                                      (d) Blind.
  2. Being able to see was :  
(a) Something Mary was not happy with                      (b) A welcome surprise for Mary  
(c) What Mary wanted    (d) What Mary was accustomed to.
  3. According to the passage, Mary's inability to see was :  
(a) A handicap caused by her doctors  
(b) What had upset her  
(c) Present from her birth  
(d) What had caused her to move into her own flat.
  4. Mary got a job after :  
(a) She could see    (b) Years of training to live in a dark world  
(c) She had left her studies    (d) The doctors had found a new technique.
  5. Find out the word from the passage which is similar to 'pain' :  
(a) Several                                      (b) Sight                                      (c) Frightened                                      (d) Anguish.
- Ans. 1. (d), 2. (a), 3. (d), 4. (b), 5. (d).

### Passage 5

Helen Keller lost her eye-sight and hearing at the age of two because of an illness. She became deaf. She also lost the ability to speak, for we learn to speak by imitating what we hear. At first, it seemed impossible that she would ever understand others or be understood by them. Hers was thus a lonely world. But she was helped by a wonderful teacher named Miss Sullivan who had herself been blind as a child but recovered her eye-sight by an operation. Miss Sullivan volunteered to help Helen and taught her to speak, read and write. Helen, later, went to a University and gained a degree. She then spent the rest of her life working to help the blind and the deaf.



**Questions :**

1. When did Helen Keller lose her eye-sight and hearing :  
 (a) A birth (b) At the age of two  
 (c) At the age of four.
2. Which word in the passage means "one who is unable to see" ?  
 (a) Deaf (b) Sight (c) Blind.
3. Helen keller learns to speak by .....
4. Miss Sallivan helped Helen to re speak, read and write.
5. Helen spent the rest of her life to .....

(Fill in the blanks)

(True/False)

(Fill in the blank)

Ans. 1. (b), 2. (c), 3. Imitating what she hears.

4. True.

5. Help the blind and the deaf.

**Passage 6**

There seems to be a general opinion in this country that Sardar Patel was slightly of harsh and rough temperament. Men call him the 'Iron Man of India'. He was, no doubt, an iron man in the sense that one could rely on him for strict and efficient administration. But as a man, to those who had the good fortune of coming into close contact with him, he was kind and considerate. At times, he even became emotional where his personal friends and followers were concerned. However, it goes without saying that the Sardar had the great skill for organizing affairs. He knew the way of picking people and putting them in their proper places. Once he judged a man and found him correct, he trusted him fully and got him to do anything he wanted.

**Questions :**

1. People usually called Sardar Patel as, "....." ? (Fill in the blank)
2. Sardar Patel had a special skill for organising affairs. (True/False)
3. Patel was kind and considerate to those who .....
4. One could rely on him for strict and efficient :  
 (a) people (b) work (c) administration.
5. Find out the word from the passage which means : 'luck'.

Ans. 1. 'Iron Man of India'.

2. True.

3. Had the good fortune of coming into close contact with him.

4. (c) administration.

5. Fortune.

**Passage 7**

There was once an engine driver who was a very careful person. He always looked at the bright side of things and was fond of telling people, who were in trouble that there was sure to be some good in it whether they could see it or not. One day his train ran into another train and he was terribly injured. When he was taken to the hospital, it was found necessary to cut off one of his legs, which was badly crushed. Some days afterwards, a party of friends visited him and one said to another "I am afraid, the poor fellow will have some difficulty in seeing the bright side of this affair." Hearing this the engine driver smiled and said "Not at all, I shall only have one boot to buy and clean in future." Cheerfulness is better than grumbling.

**Questions :**

1. The engine driver always looked at the ..... side of things :  
(a) dark                      (b) dirty                      (c) bright.
2. Antonym of 'dirty' is..... :  
(a) untidy                      (b) clean                      (c) soft.
3. The engine driver was a very careful person. (True/False)
4. The driver was fond of ..... (Fill in the blank)
5. Cheerfulness is not better than grumbling. (True/False)

Ans. 1. (c), 2. (b), 3. True,

4. Telling people bright side of the things.
5. False.

**Passage 8**

There are four methods of managing waste : recycling, land-filling, composting and incinerating. Each method has its own strengths and weaknesses.

Recycling is the process of turning waste into new materials. For example, used paper can be turned into paperboard, useful for making book covers. Recycling reduces pollution, saves materials and lowers energy use. Some people believe that collecting, processing, and converting waste uses more energy that it saves. Most people, however believe that recycling is better than landfilling for the health of our planet.

Landfilling is the oldest method of garbage disposal. It means, simply, putting the garbage in a hole. Now-a-days garbage is compacted before it is thrown into the hole. In this way, more garbage can fill each landfill. Large liners are placed in the bottom of the landfills to prevent toxic juice getting into ground water. These liners sometimes get damaged and affect the local water supply. And the areas near the land fills and filled with a foul smell. So, landfills are giving ways to composting. Composting means filling up organic matter and allow it to decompose. This produces compost which is used to make the soil richer. The only problem here is that plastics and other non-biodegradable material has to be removed from the garbage. There is a lot of plastic in the garbage which makes it difficult to compost on a large scale.

Then, we have incineration or burning the garbage we can burn it directly and use the heat to generate electricity or we may turn it into a fuel such as methane and burn it. In both the cases air is polluted. Also recyclable material is destroyed. Waste management is done by local bodies like the municipal corporation or municipal council. Our job is to help them do it efficiently.

**Questions :**

(A) Answer the following questions in complete sentences :

1. Recycling is the process of ..... (Fill in the blanks)
2. Land filling is the latest method of garbage management. (True/False)
3. Waste management is done by ..... (Fill in the blank)
4. Composting is the process of ..... (Fill in the blank)
5. To incinerate means ..... (Fill in the blank)

Ans. (A) 1. The process of turning waste into new material.

2. False.
3. Local bodies like municipal corporation.
4. Filling up organic matter and allowing it to decompose.
5. To burn.



### Passage 9

More than a century ago, some countries had no proper police force. Local leaders had their own ways of ensuring, that their orders were carried out and fulfilled. The offender did not get a second chance to repeat his mistake because he was either killed or hunted out of the district.

A London magistrate gathered together an unofficial body because he found that it was practically impossible to arrest any criminals in his area without deploying some men to detect and hunt the criminals. These were the unofficial policemen who patrolled one large district. Their position was honorary and they had very little power. Sometimes, they themselves were corrupt man who would conveniently look the other way in times of trouble.

Magistrate fielding enrolled a few trustworthy men and employed them to catch the criminals. They got poor remuneration, faced many dangers and were unpopular. People thought that they were a threat to their liberties like drinking, quarrelling in public places and even killing their opponents. The situation was made worse because the penalties for petty crimes were severe. A man could be hanged for stealing some unimportant thing.

The authorities gradually began to realize that the the policemen were vitally necessary. The government agreed to reimburse the magistrate for the men he employed. Eventually the public too came to look upon the police with a more friendly spirit as the benefits became noticeable. They found that they could walk along the streets without fear of being robbed. They could do anything good or bad irrespective of possible consequences, Gradually they gave up their freedom to commit evil deeds so that they might have a greater freedom to do good and to enjoy life peacefully and harmoniously.

#### Questions :

1. What liberties of the people were curtailed by the presence of the police ?
2. The word having the same meaning as *reimburse* is ,..... .
3. The antonym of *freedom* is .....
4. The synonym of *penalty* is .....
5. The synonym of *consequences* is .....

- Ans.** 1. The presence of the police curtailed the liberties of the people like drinking or quarrelling in public places and even killing.
2. To pay back
  3. Slavery
  4. Punishment
  5. Results.



### Passage 10

The word disease is actually dis + ease *i.e.* lack of ease. All creatures sometimes face a disease. Some diseases are cured in a short time. They are acute diseases. Some will last for a very long time even as much as a lifetime. They are chronic diseases. Common cold is an acute disease while elephantiasis is a chronic disease. Again, diseases can be infectious or non-infectious. One cause of infectious disease is micro-organisms. This is so because microbes can spread in the community and so spread the diseases there. On the other hand, non-infectious diseases may have internal causes. Some types of cancer are caused by genetic abnormalities. High blood pressure can result from excessive weight and lack of exercise.

Going back to infectious diseases, their cause can be a virus, a bacteria, a fungus or a unicellular organism called a protozoa. Some worms can also cause these diseases. Viruses,



live inside host cells, bacteria rarely do so. Again, virus, bacteria and fungi multiply quickly but worms very slowly. Since, all bacteria have common characteristics. We can use a common medicine to fight and control them. Viruses, however will not be affected by such medicines. So, we need to use different medicines to treat bacterial and viral diseases.

The microbes enter our bodies through different means and so can go to different organs of the body. But they can affect other organs also. Malaria causing microbes may go to the liver and the red blood cells. The virus causing Japanese encephalitis enters into blood but goes to infect the brain. To fight these, we need medicines. Making antiviral drugs is difficult because there are few virus specific targets. The virus actually uses our machinery for its life processes. However, we have now drugs for HIV infection and even COVID-19. It is hoped that COVID-19 will soon be controlled and eliminated from the world.

**Questions :**

1. What is the difference between *infectious* and *non-infectious* diseases ?
2. The adjective form of the word *virus* is .....
3. The antonym of *internal* is .....
4. The meaning of the word *multiply* is increase in number/decrease in number .
5. The word *affect* is a noun/verb.

**Ans.** 1. Infectious diseases may spread from person to person but non-infectious diseases can not spread in this way.

2. Viral
3. External
4. Increase in number
5. Verb.

### Passage 11

**Read I the following (passage carefully and answer, the questions given below it :**

A bee went to a tank to quench its thirst, and tumbling in, was almost drowned. A dove that happened to pass that way saw the danger the bee was in. It hastened to a neighbouring tree and, plucking off a leaf, dropped it into the water before the bee. The bee climbed on to the leaf, dried its wings and flew away to its hive, full of gratitude to the dove that had saved its life. A few days later the same bee, while returning to its hive after a hard day's work, saw a cruel boy taking aim at the dove sitting upon the branch of a tree. At once, the bee flew to the wrist of the boy and, just when he was going to shoot the dove, stung it. The boy danced with pain while the dove, realizing the danger to which it was exposed, flew safely away.

(M.P. 2023)

**Questions :**

1. What did the bee feel when it was saved by the dove :  
 (a) proud                      (b) gratitude                      (c) guilty                      (d) disappoint.
2. Who danced with the pain :  
 (a) the boy                      (b) dove                      (c) bee                      (d) elephant.
3. The meaning of the word 'tumbling', is :  
 (a) falling                      (b) neighbouring                      (c) swimming                      (d) crying.
4. The bee went to the tank :  
 (a) to quench its thirst                      (b) to meet another bee  
 (c) to save dove                      (d) to bath.
5. Who saved the bee :  
 (a) falcon                      (b) boy                      (c) ant                      (d) dove.

**Ans.** 1. (b), 2. (a), 3. (a), 4. (a), 5. (d).



## Additional Extra Passages Factual Passages

### Passage 12

You must have heard the name of Red Cross. The Red Cross Society is an International organization. Its aim is very noble. It helps the mankind suffering from disasters like earthquake, flood and famine. It helps the sick and the wounded during wars. It helps without any consideration of nationality, creed or colour. Sir Henri Dunant founded the Red Cross Society in 1863 in Switzerland. In 1920, the Indian Red Cross Society was formed. To inculcate the spirit of Red Cross in students, junior Red Cross was started. Students under 16 can be enrolled in Junior Red Cross (J.R.C.). The motto of J.R.C. is 'I serve'. Its main objectives are Health, service and Friendship. The teacher in charge of J.R.C. is called the Counsellor. The students as members of Junior Red Cross work under the guidance of their counsellor in the service of human beings who need care and support.

#### Questions :

1. Red Cross Society is an :
 

|                                |                         |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) National Organization      | (b) Local Organization  |
| (c) International Organization | (d) State Organization. |
2. Who founded the Red Cross Society :
 

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) Sir William Shakespeare | (b) Sir William Wordsworth |
| (c) Sir Henri Dunant        | (d) Sir Macaulay.          |
3. When did Red Cross Society found :
 

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| (a) 1920 | (b) 1863  |
| (c) 1947 | (d) 2000. |
4. When did Indian Red Cross Society form :
 

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| (a) 1920 | (b) 1863  |
| (c) 1947 | (d) 2000. |
5. The teacher in charge of J.R.C. is known as :
 

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| (a) Captain    | (b) Lieutenant     |
| (c) Counsellor | (d) None of these. |

Ans. 1. (c), 2. (c), 3. (b), 4. (a), 5. (c).

### Passage 13

Emperor Ashoka was one of the earliest Indian monarchs who planted shady trees on roads and in public places. The Moghuls, too, realized the necessity of shade on the roads which they constructed. But there was no conscious planning; and the peepal, banyan and pakur trees were indiscriminately mixed with neems, tamarinds and mahuas. It was only in Kashmir that they showed some preference for planning and planted magnificent avenues of chinar along the banks of the river Jhelum, which can be seen at their best at Gandhadhp and Matam on the way to Pahalgam.

A plantation plan for our national, state and district highways is urgently needed. At present, our roads are planted by the P.W.D. engineers who are ignorant of trees. Ultimately, the planting of new trees and replacement of dead trees is left to gardeners alone who plant any tree which comes handy. The result has been unfortunate, and our roadside avenues have become a mixture of odd trees.

## Questions :

- Who planted shady trees :  
 (a) Sikandar (b) Ashoka  
 (c) Maharana Pratap (d) Haider Ali.
  - The Moghuls planted the magnificent avenues of Chinara in :  
 (a) Kashmir (b) Karnataka  
 (c) Kerala (d) Kanyakumari.
  - Who was Ashoka :  
 (a) A Gardener (b) Indian Monarch  
 (c) Indian film actor (d) None of these.
  - Which plants were planted along the bank of river Jhelum :  
 (a) neem (b) peepal (c) banyan
  - At present our roads are planted by :  
 (a) S.D.O. (b) P.W.D. (c) Forest officers (d) Teachers.
- Ans. 1. (b), 2. (a), 3. (b), 4. (d), 5. (b).

## Part

Long ago in Mongolia there was an emperor who feared growing old. One day, he saw an old man in the street and he realised that someday, he too, would age, he ordered all the old people to leave his land. One day, a violent storm swept the kingdom. Nothing was safe from the storm. A strong wind blew into the palace and blew away the emperor's belongings, including a precious golden pitcher. When the storm ended, the emperor ordered the people to search for the pitcher. People went in search of the pitcher in a lake nearby. But no matter who tried, no one could get a grip on the pitcher. It was a handful of water. Yet it could be plainly seen, glittering and just above the water's surface!

## Questions :

- The emperor was upset to see the old man because :  
 (a) It reminded him that he would grow old too  
 (b) It reminded him that he had to colour his hair  
 (c) It reminded him that he might fall ill  
 (d) It reminded him of his grandfather.
- The people saw the golden pitcher :  
 (a) In a pit nearby (b) Inside the palace  
 (c) In a lake nearby (d) In a river nearby.
- The emperor's orders were that all the :  
 (a) Old men should live in his land (b) Young men should stay in his land  
 (c) Old men should leave his land (d) Children should leave his land.
- What did the people who went to bring the pitcher get :  
 (a) A handful of air (b) The pitcher's handle  
 (c) A handful of water (d) Nothing at all.
- The emperor feared :  
 (a) Getting weak (b) Getting ill  
 (c) Getting young (d) Getting old.

Ans. 1. (a), 2. (c), 3. (c), 4. (c), 5. (d).





## **I. NOTE MAKING AND SUMMARISING**

**Q. 1. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow :**

All ants have a varied diet. This is a strong point with struggle for a livelihood, as it enables them to use whatever food is, for the time, abundant and easy to find and collect. In this way a varied diet cushions them against unpredictable changes in food supply. All our species eat some sort of prey, but they will also pick-up crumbs of bread, cheese or fruit that they find lying about near picnic sites, or in parks or gardens.

Ants eat worms, centipedes and spiders; they also eat larvae, and insect adults such as: flies moths and spring tails. Such small animals do not all make easy game for ants; they are usually much quicker than the ant itself and they have an extraordinary number of ways of escaping, some jump, some flicks their bodies violently and some give out a pungent repellent substance.

If ants or indeed any hunting animals were too clever at catching their prey, they would eventually destroy the species completely and suffer themselves in turn. That is one reason, why in nature it is usually the weak and disabled that are caught and eaten. The well formed, alert and vigorous ones can escape and survive to keep the species going. The prey avoids destruction in this way and maintains a good breeding stock which provides a regular food supply for its predators. The predators can even be thought of a beneficial agent that prevents over crowding of the prey by clearing up, neatly and effectively all the superfluous individuals.

**Question :**

**Make notes on the contents of the passage and give a title also.**

**Ans. Title : The Ants.**

**Notes : 1. The food of the ants :**

- (i) Varied diet.
- (ii) Easy to find.
- (iii) Crumbs of bread, cheese, fruit.

**2. Ant's victims :**

- (i) Worms, moth, insects.

**3. Might is right :**

- (i) Weak are easy prey, like insects, larvae, spiders.
- (ii) Only the strong species serve themselves.

**Q. 2. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow :**

There are several arts which men and women think themselves to be masters of, without having been at the pains of learning them. Everybody who speaks, thinks himself to be grammarian, though he may be wholly unacquainted with the rules of grammar. Everybody who reasons thinks himself to be expert in logic though he may not know what logic is. Everybody forms to himself the character or fortune of a stranger from the features and lines of his face. No sooner are we presented to somebody we never saw before than we are immediately struck with the idea of a proud, a reserved, a lovable, or a good natured man. Upon our going into a company of strangers, our kindness or dislikes, fear or hatred, rises naturally towards several particular persons. It happens even before we have heard them speak a single word or have seen them do something.

Every passion gives a particular cast to the face. An eye can curse a person for half an hour together. An eyebrow can call a man a scoundrel. We may have some idea of the temperament and circumstances of everyman by his words. A man's speech is much more

easily distinguished than his face. In this case, the air of the whole face is much expressive than the lines of it. Nevertheless it is an injustice we are guilty of towards one another, when we are prejudiced by the looks and features of those whom we do not know.

**Question :**

**Make notes on the contents of the passage and give a title also.**

**Ans. Title :** Human Nature.

**Notes :**

1. **Wrong thoughts :**
  - (i) Without training, people pretend to be masters of different arts.
  - (ii) Pose to be logicians without any knowledge of logic.
2. **Judgement of a person :**
  - (i) We form our opinions about a stranger from his looks.
  - (ii) Fear and hatred, likes and dislikes about strangers.
3. **Face is the index of mind :**
  - (i) Cursing a person with looks.
  - (ii) Label a man from his eye-brows.
4. **Words are the expression of one's mind :**
  - (i) Speech is deceptive in most cases.
  - (ii) Face betrays the inner feelings.
5. **A good advice :**

It is injustice to be prejudiced by stranger's looks.

**Q. 3. Read the following passage carefully and do as instructed in (a) and (b) below the passage :**

It is an admitted fact that union or cooperation is strength, disunion is weakness. A united family, a united community, a united society, a united nation is strong, but those who are disunited or split up into fractions or groups, are all weak. Take the case of a football or hockey team. If the members of the team play together and cooperate with one another, they will form a strong team.

But if each member plays his own game, they will surely be defeated, however strong the individual players may be. The same is true of an army. To win a battle, an army must work as one man. Napoleon's motto was, "Divide and conquer". He tried to split up the armies fighting against him. Then he would overcome them one by one. Divided they were weak. A united team, a united army, a united nation is strong.

**Question :**

**On the basis of your reading of the above passage, make notes on it in points using heading and sub-heading.**

**Ans. Title :** A United Nation.

**Notes :**

1. **Union :**
  - (i) It is strength.
  - (ii) Family, society, community, etc.
  - (iii) e.g., an army, a football team.
2. **Disunion :**
  - (i) Splitting of groups.
  - (ii) Weakness.
  - (iii) Napoleon's Motto 'Divide and Conquer'.

**Q. 4. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow :**

Discipline is necessary in life. A man without discipline can achieve nothing worthwhile in life. Discipline is the very condition of progress, stability and strength. Discipline is necessary in all walks of human life. Without discipline there will be disorders and lawlessness in a civilised society. We cannot live without having some regards for the welfare of others. Respect for authority is the basis of discipline. Children must obey their parents. In



schools and colleges, there must be discipline, otherwise education will suffer. We find evidence of discipline all around us even in the world of nature and the world of animal discipline loses nothing but it wins a lot. Discipline helps us to safeguard our interests and restrains us from missing our liberty.

**Question :**

**Make notes on the above passage and give a title.**

**Ans. Title :** Discipline.

**Notes :** 1. **Necessity of discipline :**

- (i) Nothing can be achieved in life.
- (ii) Without discipline society will lawless.

2. **Helps others :**

- (i) It creates feeling of respect.
- (ii) It suffers education.

3. **Respect for authority :**

- (i) Children respect their parent, teacher and elders.

**Q. 5. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow :**

Bodily labour is of two kinds; either that which a man submits to for his livelihood or that which he undergoes for his pleasure. In the latter case, the name of the labour is changed to that of exercise. It differs from ordinary labour as its motive is different.

The body is a system of tubes and glands. The tubes and glands are fitted to one another in so wonderful a manner as to make a proper engine for the soul to work with. This description does not only include bones, veins and nerves and arteries but also every muscles. This general idea of a human body lets us see how absolutely necessary labour is for the body. There must be frequent motions to mix, digest and separate the juice contained in it. Labour is also necessary for cleaning the tubes and glands and to make their solid parts firm and lasting. Labour or exercise helps nature in secret distribution. Without it the body cannot maintain its strength nor the soul act with cheerfulness.

We might here mention the effects which this has upon the powers of the mind; keeping the understanding clear and imagination untroubled. There is law of union between soul and body. Had not exercise been absolutely necessary for our well-being, nature would have not made the body so proper for it.

**Question :**

**Make notes on the contents of the passage and give a title also.**

**Ans. Title :** Labour is essential for body and soul.

**Notes :** 1. **Kinds of labour :**

- (i) For livelihood, (ii) For pleasure.

2. **Difference :**

- (i) Latter called exercise
- (ii) Differs for its motive

3. **Body and soul :**

- (i) Tubes and glands of body well-linked for soul to work with.

4. **Labour necessary :**

- (i) To make soul strong to work with cheerfulness through :
  - (a) Digestion
  - (b) Cleaning of glands
  - (c) Proper distribution.

5. **Effect on mind :**

- (i) Clear understanding
- (ii) Free thoughts

6. **Conclusion :**

- (i) Exercise necessary for the union of body and soul.

**Q. 6. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions that follow :**

Self-reliance is the pilgrim's staff the worker's best tool. It is the master key that unlocks all the difficulties of life. "Help yourself and Heaven will help you" is the maxim which receives daily confirmation. He who begins with crutches will generally end with crutches. Help from within always strengthens but help from without invariably enfeebles the recipient. It is not in the sheltered garden, but in the rugged Alpine cliff, where the storms bent most violently, that the toughest plants are reared. It is not by the use of corks, bladders and life-buoys that one can best learn to swim but by plunging courageously into the waves and buffeting them. To wait until some charitable man passes by - to stand with arms folded, signing for a helping hand is not the part of any manly mind. The habit of depending upon others should be vigorously resisted since it tends to weaken the intellectual faculties and paralyses the judgment. The struggle against adverse circumstances has, on the contrary, bracing and strengthening effect, like that of the pure mountain air on an enfeebled frame. This is a lesson which nowadays is not taught in educational institutions. To us it seems the voice of modern system of education that they lay down too many 'royal roads' to knowledge. Those impediments which merely compelled the student to think and labour for himself are now most carefully removed and he glides so smoothly along the well-beaten high-ways that he pauses not to heed the flowers on either side.

**Question :**

**Make notes on the contents of the passage and give a title also.**

**Ans. Title : Self-Help.**

**Notes : 1. Self-help is :**

- (i) a master-key to success.
- (ii) Helps to overcome all difficulties.

**2. (i) Help from within gives strength :**

- (ii) Help from outside weakens us.
- (iii) Toughest plants grow on mountain slopes.
- (iv) Swimming is not learnt by use of corks and bladders.

**3. Depending on other weaken us :**

- (i) Fear no difficulties.
- (ii) Face them boldly.

**4. Main defect of modern education is that it does not compel the student to think and labour for himself, independently.**

**Q. 7. Read the following passage carefully and do as instructed in (a) and (b) below the passage :**

If you make a mistake have the moral courage immediately to acknowledge your error and put it right. Mistakes do very little harm if they are acknowledged without delay and corrected before they have had the time to do any damage. Let them remain unattended and they may do untold harm both to the task in hand and to your reputation. Contrary to general belief, nobody despises a person who has the moral courage to admit that he is in the wrong and is immediately prepared to make good the errors. What can you say to a man who admits, "I beg your pardon." you are quite right and I am quite wrong. Please let me set the matter right now immediately before it has done any harm. "Would you despise a man like that ?" Then why not emulate him ? But here let me tell you, nobody likes such a fool as a man who is trying to keep his end up by desperate lying when he is in the wrong and everyone knows it.



**Question :**

On the basis of your reading of the above passage, make notes on it in points, using heading and sub-heading.

**Ans. Title :** Acknowledge your mistake : Be happy.

**Notes :** 1. Mistake :

- (i) Have courage to accept it.
- (ii) Acknowledge it without delay.
- (iii) Correct it before they harm.

2. Nobody despises such person :

- (i) Who accepts the mistake : Without delay.
- (ii) Try to make good error : Soon.

3. Appreciate the person who have the moral courage to accept the mistake soon.

**Q. 8. Read the following passage carefully and do as instructed in (a) and (b) below the passage :**

There are many different kinds of musical instruments. They are divided into three main classes according to the way they are played. For example, some instruments are played by blowing air into them. These are called wind instruments. In some of these the air is made to vibrate inside a wooden tube and these are said to be of the woodwind family. The examples of this family are the flute, the clarinet and the bassoon. Other instruments are made of brass : the trumpet and the horn are the examples. There are also various other wind instruments such as the mouth organ and bagpipes.

Some instruments are played by banging or striking them. One obvious example is the drum, of which there are various kinds. Instruments like this are called percussion instruments.

The last big group of instruments are the ones which have strings. There are two main kinds of stringed instruments : those in which the music is made by plucking the strings and those where the player draws a bow across the strings. Examples of the former are the harp and the guitar and that of the latter are the violin and the cello.

**Question :**

On the basis of your reading of the above passage make notes on it in points using heading and sub-heading.

**Ans. Title :** Instruments.

**Notes :** 1. Musical instrument :

- 1.1 Different kinds.
- 1.2 Division of three classes.
- 1.3 Played by blowing air – wind instrument.
- 1.4 Woodwind family – the flute, clarinet, bassoon.
- 1.5 Other instrument – made of brass, trumpet, horn.

2. Other instruments :

- 2.1 Played by banging or striking.
- 2.2 Example – drum.
- 2.3 This type called percussion instruments.

3. Last big group of instruments :

- 3.1 Have strings.
- 3.2 Two main kinds – music, by picking string drawing across strings.
- 3.3 First type – the harp and guitar.
- 3.4 Second type – violin and cello.

**Q. 9.** Read the following passage carefully and do as instructed in (a) and (b) below the passage :

The need for money originates from the fact that different people in society produce different things. This means that they depend on each other for goods and services. Let us take the case of a farmer who produces more food than he requires and a carpenter who lives by selling tables and chairs he has made. It will be obvious that unless some means of exchange will be for them to use farmer's goods, the farmer will not be able to get rid of his surplus food and carpenter will starve. Clearly the simplest means of exchange will be for them to use barter, in other words to exchange a certain amount of goods (farmer's grain) for a certain amount of another, (carpenter's table or chair) obviously barter can work only in a very simple society. In an advanced society, we cannot go around for the things we need.

**Question :**

On the basis of your reading of the above passage, make notes on it and supply a suitable title.

**Ans. Title :** Difference means of exchange.

**Notes :** 1. Barter System :

- 1-1 Different people – different things
- 1-2 Depend on each other.
- 1-3 Surplus food.
- 1-4 Can work –
- 1-5 Can't

2. Me

**Means of exchange :**

- 1 Use barter.
- 3-2 Words to exchange.
- 3-3 A certain amount of goods.
- 4. Obviously barter :
- 4-1 Advanced society.
- 4-2 Around of things.

**Q. 10.** Games and sports are an important part of education. They help in the development of the physique and mind of the student. A sound body possesses a sound mind. If we are weak and sick, we can not have a fertile brain. Games and sports keep us healthy. They keep us active and make us smart. Mere bookish knowledge would not lead to be blended in a suitable proportion so that the students can have the best of them. They should not only develop the mind but also the body. Both are essential for a wholesome personality.

Games and sports have great value in student life. The foundation for a virtuous is laid in school. The sports arena teachers many things to the students give them discipline. It develops, their sportsman spirit, mental outlook, cheerful nature, strong physique. All these are important traits of successful life. (M.P. 2022)

**Questions :**

(i) On the basis of your reading of the above passage make a note on it, using abbreviations if needed.

(ii) Give a suitable title to it.



**Ans. Title :** Games and Sports : An Important part of Education.

**Notes :** 1. **Games and Sports :**

1-1 Important part of Education.

1-2 Helps to develop physically and mentally.

2. **Sound body possesses sound mind :**

2-1 Weak and sick body not have a fertile brain.

3. **Games and Sports :**

3-1 Keep us healthy, active and smart

3-2 Mind and body both make wholesome person

3-3 Have great value in student's life

3-4 Develop sportsman spirit, cheerful nature etc.

**Q. 11. Read the passage carefully and answer the following questions :**

Since time began, the natural broad, - leaved mixed, forests of the Himalayas have played a crucial role in life of the people of that region. In fact, the forests are the foundation of the whole economy of the hill villages. Green leaves and grass, for example, provide fodder for the animals whose dung is used as fertilizer. Dry twigs and branches are the only sources of domestic cooking fuel. The forests also provide large supplies of fruits, edible nuts, fibres and herbs for local consumption. The forest break the flow of the seasonal rainfall that lashes the slopes of this mountain range every year during the monsoon. This creates springs and perennial streams which are vital for the mountain people and their animals during the hot summer months.

For many 4years, however, large areas of these rich forest resources have been destroyed. For example, the forests of Tehri Garhwal were exploited to supply timber for the expanding railway network in the plains. The people of Tehri Garhwal in 1930 began a noncooperation movement called Satyagrahaa, form of peaceful resistance to obtain justice in opposition to the oppressive forest laws. (M.P. 2023)

**Questions :**

(i) **On the basis of your reading of the above passage make a note on it using abbreviations; if needed?**

(ii) **Give a suitable title to it.**

**Ans. Title :** The forest of the Himalayas

**Note :** 1. **Natural-Broad-leaved forest of Himalayas :**

(a) Played a crucial role in life of local people.

(b) Foundation of whole economy.

2. **Forest provide :**

(a) Fodder for animals, dungs used as fertilizer.

(b) Twigs and branches used as cooking fuel.

(c) Large supply of fruits, edible nuts, fibre of herbs.

3. **Forest break :**

3.1. Flow of seasonal rainfall.

3.1.(a) Vital for people and animals in summer.

4. **But :**

(a) Large area of forest destroyed.

5. **People of Tehri Garhwal started :**

(a) Satyagrah to obtain justice.

**Q. 12. Read the passage carefully and answer the following questions :**

Crude mineral oil comes out of the earth as a thick brown or black liquid with a strong smell. It is a complex mixture of many different substances, each with its own individual qualities. Most of them are combinations of hydrogen and carbon in varying proportions. Such hydrocarbons are also found in other forms such as bitumen, asphalt and natural gas. Mineral oil originates from the carcasses of tiny animals and from plants that live in the sea. Over millions of years, these dead creatures form large deposits under sea-bed and ocean currents cover them with a blanket of sand and silt. As this material hardens, it becomes sedimentary rock and effectively shuts out the oxygen, thus preventing the complete decomposition of the marine deposit's underneath. The layers of sedimentary rocks become thicker and heavier. Their pressure produces heat, which transforms the tiny carcasses into crude oil in a process that is still going on today.

**Ans. Title : Crude Oil**

1. Crude mineral oil :
  - 1-1 Thick brown or black liquid
  - 1-2 Mixture of substance
  - 1-3 Hydrogen and carbon.
2. Mineral oil originates :
  - 2-1 Carcasses of Animals and plants
  - 2-2 Millions of year
  - 2-3 Deposits under sea-bed.
3. Process going on today :
  - 3-1 Decomposition of marine deposit's
  - 3-2 Pressure
  - 3-3 Carcasses into Crude oil.



**Q. 13. Read the passage carefully and answer the following questions :**

The heart is one of the most vital components of the human body. The heart of the human body does a continuous job to keep oxygen-rich blood flowing through the body. All the cells need a constant supply of oxygen, particularly in the brain. The brain cells live only four to five minutes after the oxygen is cut off and death comes to the entire body. Heart disease can result from damage to the heart muscles, the valves or the pacemaker. If the muscle is damaged, the heart is unable to pump properly. If the valves are damaged, blood cannot flow normally. Dr John Gibbon of U.S.A. developed a machine in 1953 that could take over temporarily from the heart. Surgeons had the chance to repair or replace a defective heart.

Many patients have had plastic valves inserted in their hearts when their hearts were faulty. Many people are now being kept alive with tiny battery-operated pacemakers.

**Ans. Title : Human Heart**

1. The heart of human body :
  - 1-1 Vital component
  - 1-2 Do continuous job
  - 1-3 Keep oxygen rich.
2. Heart Disease :
  - 2-1 Damage heart muscles
  - 2-2 Valves or pacemaker
  - 2-3 Unable to pump.
3. Battery-operated pacemaker :
  - 3-1 Developed by Dr. Gibbon in 1953
  - 3-2 Repair and replace heart
  - 3-3 Plastic valves inserted.



**Q. 14.** Fat comes in two types; Omega-3 which is found in marine life and Omega-6 which is concentrated in vegetable oils. The first is good, the other is plain rotten. The best source of Omega-3 is preferably sea-fish. But frying it in Omega-6 rich vegetable oil kills all its goodness. Ageing brains have low levels of thiamin, which is concentrated in wheat germ and bran, nuts, meat and cereals. More good brain-food comes from liver, milk and almonds, which are rich in riboflavin and extremely good for memory. Carotene, available in deep green leafy vegetables and fruits, is also good for geriatric brains. So is a high iron diet; it can make old brains gallop hyperactively like young ones. Iron comes from greens; liver shell-fish, red meat and soyabeans. Seas-food, very high in iron, is an excellent diet supplement. The New England Journal of Medicine reported in its May, 1985 issue that 30 grams of fish a day could result in a dramatic drop in the chances of acquiring cardi-ovascular diseases. Sea fish, particularly shell-fish, crabs, mackerel and sardines, are more effective than riverine fish because the latter is more vulnerable to chemical effluents.

**Ans. Title : Healthy Diet**

**1. Fat :**

- 1-1 Omega-3, in a marine life, good
- 1-2 Omega-6, in vegetable oils, plain rotten

**2. Sources of Omega-3 :**

- 2-1 Sea fish
- 2-2 Loses its goodness while frying in vegetable oils

**3. Brain food :**

- 3-1 Thiamin, low in ageing brain
- 3-3 Riboflavin, good for memory
- 3-4 Carotene, good for geriatric brain.

**4. Iron Diet and its sources :**

- 4-1 Make old brain more active like young ones.
- 4-2 Comes from greens, liver shell fish, red meat and soyabeans.
- 4-3 Seas-food.

**5. Seas-food :**

- 5-1 An excellent diet supplement
- 5-2 Fish a day could drop heart disease
- 5-3 Sea fish is more effective than river fish.

**15.** Man is made up of many qualities, both good and bad, and among the latter is anger. The nature of every human being is such that anything that gives offense to his sentiments or goes against his principles, excites his anger. The evils which result from anger are many. Under its influence, a man loses his power of reasoning and judgement. Not being able to retain control over himself when angry, he does not know what he is doing or saying. Under its influence, a man puts off his balance to the extent that he forgets his duty towards his superiors and may even say things which are extremely insulting to them.

**Ans. Title : Disadvantages of Anger**

**1. Man has both qualities :**

- 1-1 Good
- 1-2 Bad

**2. Anger excites :**

- 2-1 Anything that gives offence to his principles.

**3. Its influence :**

- 3-1 Man loses power of reasoning and judgement
- 3-2 Does not retain control over himself
- 3-3 Does not know what he is doing or saying
- 3-4 Forgets his duty and insults his superiors.

## II. LETTER WRITING

### LETTERS AND APPLICATIONS

**Introduction :** Letters can be formal or informal but applications are only formal. Informal letters are written to our friends, parents or relatives. The tone and language in these letters is conversational and has a personal touch/element. You can use any format in an informal letter.

On the other hand a formal letter is written in formal language and has no personal element. In writing a formal letter a proper format must be adhered to such letters are written for official purpose. They may be written to an officer to make a complaint or request some public facility or to the editor to draw the attention of the public or of concerned authorities to some problem.

The format of a formal letter has the following points in the given order :

**(1) Sender's address :** It is written on the top left hand corner. No comma or full stop is used.

*e.g.*, 750, C sector  
Sulekha  
Indore  
Pin 452010

**(2) The date :** It is written below the sender's address in one of the following ways :  
(a) 20 April 2019 or (b) 20<sup>th</sup> April 2019.

**(3) Receiver's address :** Such letters are addressed to the authority. So, the address is written after the post/position of the official.

*e.g.*,  
The Principal                      The Collector  
ITMA Vidhya Niketan or      Indore Distt.  
Vijay Nagar                      Indore  
Indore

**(4) Subject :** It shows the objective or the main theme and should be brief but clear.

*e.g.*, (a) complaint about the unauthorised use of loudspeakers.

(b) road accidents on the A.B. Road.

**(5) Salutation :** Write Sir/Madam for officials, heads of institutions and Dear Sir/Sirs for managers/proprietors, etc.

**(6) The body/Content :** The language of such letters should be direct and matter-of-fact. Unnecessary details should be avoided. We should go point by point highlighting the necessary factors. They should be logically ordered.

**(7) The complimentary close :** The logical ending in formal/official letters is

(a) Yours faithfully,

(b) Yours truly.

In letters to heads of institutions - 'Yours faithfully' is the common complimentary close.

**(8) Signature :** The formal letters must have our signature. The name and designation should be written below it.

*e.g.*, .....  
(signature)  
M.L. Sharma  
Principal



Note : In the questions the name of the sender is sometimes given. *E.g.*, You are Gopal, a resident of Mamta colony. In such a case, use the given name in signature.

(signature)

Gopal

Mamta colony

or, You are Sharad, a student of class X 'C' of Little wonders school Indore.

(signature)

Sharad

X 'C'

Little Wonders School

Indore

Now we shall see some samples of the different types of formal letters that you may be required to write. The question carries 10 marks. So, it needs to be answered in a proper manner. Please study the samples carefully.

### FORMAL LETTERS

1. You are Nandini Sharma, a resident of Vijay Nagar Indore. The streets in your area are not cleaned daily and garbage is lying everywhere. Write a letter to the sanitation department Head of your area to take action in this matter.

Ans. 68, Vijay Nagar

Indore

08/02/20.....

The Head

Deptt. of Sanitation

Vijay Nagar, Indore

Subject : Insanitary condition of roads in the area.

Sir,

It is with some pain that I wish to bring to your notice the insanitary conditions of our area. The sweeper has not visited the area for more than a week. The result is that the street is covered with dirt. Also, garbage has been thrown here and there.

A sewage line is also damaged and the dirty water is collecting in a corner. If immediate action is not taken the colony may face a terrible epidemic. I, therefore, request you, on behalf of the residents of the colony to take immediate action in this matter.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully

Nandini Sharma

68, Vijay Nagar

2. You are Radhika Sharma, a student of class XII, residing in Geeta Bhavan area of Jabalpur. In your area people use loudspeakers which troubles many people. Write a letter to the S.P. of the city requesting him to put a ban on the use of loud speakers.

Ans. 93, Geeta Bhavan

Jabalpur

15/01/20.....

The S.P.

Jabalpur city

Jabalpur

Subject : Ban on the use of loud speakers.

Sir,

I am a resident of Geeta Bhavan of the city. I am a student of class XII. This is the peak period of preparation for examination. Some people in the area play loudspeakers till late at night. There is also a marriage garden in the area where loud-music is played till very late. Old people or people suffering from some disease also cannot sleep peacefully. The students of the area suffer the most.

I, therefore, request you to put a ban on the use of loud speakers at least till the examinations are over.

Hope that this request will be favourably considered.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully

Radhika

93, Geeta Bhavan

**3. Write a letter to the post master of G .P.O. Indore complaining about the non-delivery of a registered post parcel. You are Ramlal Tripathi, resident of 36, Sindhi Colony, Indore.**

Ans. 36, Sindhi colony

Indore,

15/10/20.....

The Post Master

G.P.O.

Indore

Subject : Non-delivery of Regd. post parcel.

Sir,

I, Ramlal Tripathi of 36, Sindhi colony sent a registered post parcel to my brother Shyamlal Tripathi at 36, Ramnagar Kanpur on 3<sup>rd</sup> Oct. 2018. The receipt number of the same is 392-A. The post office at Kanpur says that they have not received the parcel. The parcel contains some documents of vital importance and their loss will put me to a lot of trouble.

I request you to kindly look into the matter and deliver the parcel as soon as possible.

Hope you will take immediate action in this matter.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully

Ramlal Tripathi

36, Sindhi colony

Indore

**4. Write an application to the principal of your school to grant you leave for three days because your parents have gone to attend some family function and you need to look after your old grandmother. You are Sharadendu Thakur of class IX B of Govt. H.S. school Shajapur.**

Ans. 25/11/20.....

The Principal,

Govt. H.S. School

Shajapur (M.P.)

Subject : Application for leave for three days.



Respected sir,

I am a student of class IX 'B'. My parents have gone to attend a family function in Indore. My grandmother who is 80 years old lives with us. During the absence of the elders, I have to look after her needs. Kindly, therefore grant me leave for three days from 25/11/20..... to 27/11/20..... and oblige.

Thanking you,

Yours obediently

Sharadendu Thakur

Class IX 'B'

**5. You are Rohan Jat, the monitor of Class X 'B' of Govt. Model H.S. School Indore. Your class wants to go on a picnic at Tinchha fall, a place of natural beauty near Indore. Write an letter to the principal of your school for permitting you to go to the picnic.**

**Ans.** 20/09/20....

The Principal

Govt. Model H.S. School

Indore

Subject : Permission to go on picnic.

Respected sir,

I am Rohan Jat, the monitor of class X 'B'. Our class wants to go on a picnic to Tinchha fall. It is a place of great natural beauty near Indore. Our social science teacher Mrs. Dey and English teacher Mr. Jitendra have consented to go with us. We will also make reports on our visit as part of integrated project. We assure you that we will observe proper discipline and follow safety precautions.

Kindly permit us to go on the picnic next Sunday 27/09/20.....

Thanking you,

Yours obediently

Rohan Jat

X 'B' Monitor

**6. Write an application to the Principal, K.C. Pant School Jaora requesting him to issue to T.C. (School leaving certificate) as your father has been transferred to Indore. Sign as Gopal Singh Rajput of Class VIII 'A'**

**Ans.** 15/10/20.....

The Principal

K.C. Pant School

Jaora (M.P.)

Subject : Application for transfer certificate.

Respected Sir,

I beg to say that I am a student of class VIII 'A' of your school. My father is a government servant and he has been transferred from Jaora to Indore. My family is shifting to Indore.

I cannot, therefore, continue my studies here. Kindly issue me transfer certificate as soon as possible.

I shall ever remain thankful to you and all my teachers from whom I learnt a lot.

Thanking you,

Yours obediently

Gopal Singh Rajput

VIII 'A'

7. You are Sumit, studying in X 'B' in Chandrashekhar School, Pitham Pura, Indore. Write an application to the Principal of your school requesting him to grant you full fee concession.

Ans.

The Principal  
Chandrashekhar School,  
Pitham Pura,  
Indore  
20<sup>th</sup> February, .....

Sir,

I am a student of X 'B' of your school. My father is a farmer. He cannot afford the essential needs of our family. He has a large family to look after. There isn't any other source of income. It is very difficult for my father to meet the expenses of my education. He can't pay my fees.

Sir, I am one of the good students of my class. I have always given good results in all my examinations till yet. I am also the captain of the cricket team of the school. I was free student last year. Kindly grant me full fee concession this year also. I shall be thankful to you for this kindness.

Thanking in anticipation.

Yours Obediently

Sumit

X 'B'

8. You are Vipin, a student of X 'A' studying in Shri Vivekanand School, Rohinipuram, Bhopal. Your father has been transferred to Kota. The whole family is shifting there. Write an application to the Principal of your school requesting him to issue you the School Leaving Certificate.

Ans.

The Principal  
Shri Vivekanand School,  
Rohinipuram,  
Bhopal  
20<sup>th</sup> February, .....

Sir,

I am a student of X 'A' of your school. My father is a railway employee and he has been transferred to Kota. All the members of our family are leaving for Kota next week. I have also to go with him. In this condition I can't continue my study in your school. So, hereby this application you are requested to issue me the School Leaving Certificate. I have already paid the fees. No dues list is enclosed here with.

Kindly arrange to issue me my School Leaving Certificate (Transfer Certificate) as soon as possible.

Thanking you.

Yours Obediently

Vipin

X 'A'



**9. Informing to the Postmaster about change in Address :**

You are Subodh Sharma. You have moved into other house from 210/C-2, North Vihar, Bhopal to C-5, Railway Colony, Indore. Write a letter to the Postmaster requesting him to redirect all your mail to your new address.

Ans.

C-5, Railway Colony,

Bhopal

27<sup>th</sup> Feb. ....

The Postmaster

North Vihar,

Bhopal

Sir,

**Subject :** Request to redirect mail to the changed address.

Hereby this letter I want to inform you that, I have changed my residence from 210/C-2 North Vihar to C-5, Railway Colony, New Delhi.

I request you kindly redirect my all mails received in my name to my new address mentioned above.

I shall be highly obliged.

Thanking you.

Yours faithfully,

Subodh Sharma

**10. You are Naveen Sharma studying in Govt. H. Sec. School, Rewa. Write an application to your Principal for issuing you books from the book-bank. (M.P. 2022)**

To,

The Principal,

Govt. Higher Secondary School,

Rewa (M.P.)

Honourable Sir,

**Subject :** An application for the text books from the school Book-Bank.

Most humbly, I beg to state that I am a poor student of class X in your school. My father is a poor farmer. He can not afford to buy me my text books from the market.

I, therefore, request you to issue me the text books from the school Book-Bank.

Yours Sincerely,

Naveen Sharma

Class X.

**Q. 11. You are Manas/Mansi studying in Govt. Higher secondary school, Balaghat. Write an application to your principal for issuing you school leaving certificate.**

(M.P. 2023)

To,

The principal,

Govt. Higher Secondary School

Balaghat (M.P.)

Honourable sir,

**Subject :** An application for issuing School Leaving Certificate.

Most humbly, I beg to state that I have passed High School Examination from your school, this year. Now I want to take admission in Govt. ITI college Lal barra-(Balaghat)

I, therefore, request you to issue me my school leaving certificate along with a character certificate.

Yours Sincerely,

Manas Dubey.

|                  |
|------------------|
| INFORMAL LETTERS |
|------------------|

1. Write a letter to your friend inviting him to spend some days with you in the coming summer vacation.

Ans.

29, Mahaveer Road,

Indore

Dear Jitendra,

Namastey !

I am fine here and hope the same for you. My examinations are over. I invite you to spend some days with me in the coming summer vacation. We shall go to Mandu for sight seeing. I am sure we shall enjoy the visit. All of us are waiting for you.

Please convey my regards to mother and father.

Rest is O.K. Reply soon.

Yours sincerely,

Anil

To,

Jitendra Singh Tomar

108/59 Shivaji Nagar,

Bhopal

2. You are Ashok Mitra, resident of 12, Arera Colony, Bhopal. Write a letter to your younger brother advising him to study well and secure good marks in the examination.

Ans.

Ashok Mitra

12, Arera Colony,

Bhopal

10.01. ....

Dear Sanjay,

Accept my blessings. I received your letter today. I am happy that, you have secured 56% marks in your half yearly examination.

I advise you to study well and place yourself on the top of result in your annual examination.

Your career depends on your result.

Always remember one thing that only a hard working man can place himself ahead.

Convey my regards to parents.

Your brother,

Ashok Mitra

To,

Sanjay Mitra,

C/o. S. K. Mitra,

32, South Avenu,

Gwalior

3. Write a letter to your friend congratulating him on his brilliant success in the High School Examination.

Ans.

Indore

June 30, .....



Dear friend,  
Congratulations,

I am very happy to know that, you have passed the H.S.S.C. Examination with colours. Your name has topped the list of merit. I am proud of you. Father and mother too become very happy and they send their blessings.

Accept my heartiest congratulations on your brilliant success.

Rest is O.K.

Your friend

Jyoti

**4. Write a letter to father for asking permission to go on a tour :**

**You are Ranjit studying in Sarvodaya Public School, Bhopal and staying in the Boy's Hostel of the school. Your school has planned a tour for a week to North India. Write a letter to your father requesting him to permit you to go on the tour.**

**Ans.**

Boy's Hostel,  
Sarvodaya Public School,  
Bhopal  
16<sup>th</sup> January, .....

Dear father,

I received your affectionate letter yesterday. You have asked me about my studies and about any first terminal test. Father, my study is going well. I have made a routine time-table for study. I have worked hard and expect more than 85% marks in all the subjects.

Father, our school has organized a ten days tour programme to North India in the winter break. We have to deposit 1000/- rupees per head for this tour.

This tour will provide me an experience to see the famous temples of the North India. I have never been visited to those places. It will be an enjoyable experience for me. Kindly allow me to go to the tour, also send me Rs. 1000/- for this tour purpose.

Convey my regards to Mummy and love to Raju.

Your affectionate Son

Ranjit

**5. Invitation to Birthday Party :**

**You are Shekhar Kapoor living at 122-C, Medha Apartment, Mayur Vihar, Bhopal. Write a letter to your friend Sumit to attend your birthday party.**

**Ans.**

122-C Medha Apartment,  
Mayur Vihar I,  
Bhopal  
17<sup>th</sup> January, .....

Dear Sumit,

You will be glad to know that my fifteenth birthday falls on 20<sup>th</sup> February, ..... I am going to celebrate it, this year with great enthusiasm. It will be a fine occasion to meet my all friends. My father has sent for a photographer to take snaps in striking poses at the time of "Birthday Celebrating". My father is giving a sumptuous party on this occasion. The party will be held at 6 o'clock in the evening. I heartily invite you to attend this party.

I have made so many new friends in my school. I am inviting them too. It will be a nice time to laugh and dance together.

I hope you won't disappoint me.

Convey my regards to your parents and love to Rajesh.

With love,

Yours sincerely

Shekhar Kapoor.

**6. Write a letter to your father telling him about your study.**

**Ans.**

11, Arera Hills

Bhopal,

20 Sept. 2021

My dear father,

I received your letter yesterday. In this you seemed concerned about me and my studies. I am quite well here and hope the same for all of you there. My studies are going well. I am working very hard. I study 5-6 hours daily apart from my school hours. I hope I will get very good marks in my Board Examination. So you need not worry anything about my studies.

I need some important books, so please send me Rs. 2500 by phone-pay, so that I may purchase those books.

Regards to dear Mom, and love to dear Sonu.

Yours affectionately

Kirti Parmar.

**Q. 7. You are Ritik/Ritika, lives in Indore. Write a letter to friend inviting him/her on your's father's promotion party. (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.**

11, Janaki Nagar,

By pass road,

Indore (M.P.)

23rd May, 2023

My dear Sheetal,

I hope you with your family are fine there. You will really be glad to know that my father has been promoted Assistant Manager to the branch manager in the local branch of Central Bank of India on 20<sup>th</sup> May 2023. My father has decided to hold a big party to celebrate this occasion. So he is throwing a party on 29<sup>th</sup> May 2023. It will be a great celebration on that day.

Being my best friend I am inviting you. All our friends are coming. My parents will be very happy to see you. I would earnestly request to you to join the party and I sincerely believe you will join the party.

There will be a lots of fun in the party. I am looking forward to seeing you with your family. My regards to your parents.

Yours Truly

Ritika.



## III. LONG COMPOSITION

### ESSAY WRITING

#### 1. Independence Day Celebration

Or

Any National Festival

Or

A School Function

“A man is born free but everywhere he is bound in chains.” — *Rousseux*

**1. Introduction :** Fifteenth of August is a red letter day for the whole of India because we achieved the long cherished independence on the 15th of August 1947. We had to struggle hard for long and our national leaders were put to severe sufferings by the foreign rulers. Many times the British rulers fired on the innocent crowd of freedom fighters as in 'Jaliyanwala Bagh.' But this black rule did not last long and we got the glorious victory.

**2. Dawn of Independence :** With the dawn of independence the chapter of slavery was closed and we had our own government with the Prime Ministership of Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru. In memory of this glorious victory we celebrate this auspicious day with great joy every year.

**3. Flag Hoisting and Procession :** Independence day is celebrated in our school every year in a remarkable manner. This year also we assembled in the school in the early morning at 7.00 a.m. Our honourable Principal unfurled the national-flag followed by singing of National Anthem. Then there was the ceremonial march-past by the N.C.C. troop of our school. The Principal took the salute and read out the message of the Chief Minister of our state. After that the whole school started on a colourful procession and took a round of the town. Many guardians and government officials joined us on the way.

**4. Back at School :** On the return of the procession to school premises, it turned into a meeting under the chairmanship of the Municipal President. Short speeches of national importance were delivered. National poems were recited. The huge crowd of the general public and guardians was very much impressed. At the end sweets were distributed to the students by the people of the town.

**5. The Colourful Evening :** In the evening a programme of games and sports was held. A huge crowd had assembled to watch the performance of students. The guidance of our teachers was very much praised by everybody. Just before sun-set the National Flag was pulled down with honour. Later the whole of school building was illuminated artistically with small bulbs of different colours.

**6. Conclusion :** Thus the independence day was celebrated with great rejoicing. Now we have gained political liberty. But it is not enough. We have to struggle hard to get rid of illiteracy and poverty. The government of India has done a lot in this direction yet much is left to be done. Our former President, Abdul Kalam's vision that India will become a developed country by 2020 will come true if we make it a mission and fulfil it with action.

#### 2. Electricity in Life

**1. Introduction :** Electricity is a great wonder of science. Modern life is not possible without electricity. It has really invaded all fields of human life.

**2. Electricity in House-hold Works :** A housewife uses various gadgets which run on electricity. She uses oven, fridge, mixer, washing-machine and electric iron. All these make her work easy. The fans, coolers and heaters save us from severe weather conditions. They add to our comfort.



We use radio, tape-recorder, T.V., C.D. player and V.C.Ps. They entertain us and enrich our knowledge. They help us to pass time.

**3. Electricity outside the House :** A doctor today uses many scientific instruments. They run on electricity. X-rays and E.C.G etc. help the doctor to diagnose diseases. Micro-surgery is possible only with the help of sensitive-electronic apparatus.

Trains run on electricity. Roads are lighted by it. Factories that produce consumer goods for us are run on electricity. Buses, cars and scooters have electronic parts. Multi-storey buildings have lifts. Banks use electronic alarms to safeguard our money.

Farmers use pumps and other machines which run on electricity.

**4. Conclusion :** There is not a field of life where electricity is not used. In fact, its excessive use has brought about the problem of its shortage.

We however hope that alternative sources of electricity will be discovered and life would continue to move as happily as ever.

### 3. Environmental Pollution

Or

#### Problem of Pollution

**1. Introduction :** It is said that man is the child of his environment. From our environment we get things without which it may not be possible to live. Our relation with our environment is delicately balanced.

**2. Causes of Pollutions :** Man is however, polluting this environment by various acts. We cut trees to make houses and roads. We dispose waste matter into rivers. Our vehicles pollute the atmosphere with toxic-gases. Vehicles and machines produce a lot of noise.

**3. Problem of Pollution :** Nature has its ways of clearing the toxic material from the environment but it has a limit. We have crossed that limit. So the problem of pollution has become severe.

Cities have polluted air. This causes respiratory diseases. The water of rivers is polluted. It contains chemical waste and disease-germs. So, there are water-borne-diseases. The high noise in cities causes deafness and mental tension.

**4. Measures against Pollution :** It is a good thing that we have become aware of this problem. Now, there is restriction of cutting trees or polluting the rivers. Farmers are asked to use pesticides rationally. There is also awareness that our resources cannot bear the load of our excessive population.

**5. Conclusion :** It is a global problem. Agencies like the UNO and other bodies are trying to make people aware of the problem. Indeed, we can solve this problem only by making combined efforts. We must leave the future generations a cleaner and greener world.

### 4. Importance of Trees/Forests (M.P. 2022)

Or

#### Why should we plant Trees ?

**1. Introduction :** From old days, man and trees have lived in harmony we depend on them as they depend on us. In fact, the animals can't live if there are no plants. Let us see how plants and trees are useful to us.

**2. Advantages of Trees :** Trees give us wood. This wood is used as fuel. It is also used for building houses and boats. Wood is the raw material for paper and rayon.

Trees and plants make starch by photosynthesis. This starch is the food of all grass eating animals. It is also the main food for human beings. Our demand for meat is also indirectly fulfilled by plants.



Trees give out water vapour. This cools the air. It is helpful in causing rains. Also, they bind the soil fast and stop the erosion of soil.

We get many herbs and medicines from plants, Uses of Tulsi, Neem, Cinchona, Eucalyptus, Amla, etc. are well known. They also purify the air by taking carbon-dioxide and releasing oxygen to the atmosphere.

Forests also provide food and shelter to various birds and animals which make our earth such a beautiful place.

**3. Causes of the Problem :** Unfortunately, our growing population needs lots of space and so trees have been mercilessly cut in the past. Forests are destroyed to make roads, dams and mines.

**4. Conclusion :** It is time, we should think seriously about this. If we don't wake up in time to the need to save forests, it may be too late.

### 5. Wonders of Science

(M.P. 2022)

Or

#### Science, a Blessing or a Curse

#### Science : A good servant but a bad master

Or

#### Science : A Boon or a Curse

"In the sky above, in the ocean below and on the earth in between-everywhere has gone the triumphant chariot of science." — Anon

"Our life, today, is governed and conditioned by the offshoots of science." — Nehru

**1. Introduction :** In the dim dawn of creation when man opened his eyes he saw the blazing sun, the shining moon, the twinkling stars, the fast flowing rivers etc. he cried in the amazement, "What are these?"

That question has been fully answered, today, by science.

The modern age is the age of science. The effect of science can be seen in all aspects of life. There are many wonderful things invented by science. In fact it has brought about a complete change in the whole world. We can say that science has changed this world into a fairyland.

**2. Science as a Blessing :** We can discuss science as a blessing as below:

**(i) Science in our Daily Life :** Science has increased comforts in the life of mankind. Daily life has now become very easy with the help of science. Food can be cooked very quickly by pressure cooker and can be kept fresh for a long time in refrigerator. Clothes can be washed in a washing machine without any labour in a very short time.

**(ii) Electricity :** Electricity is a great wonder of science. Science has given us fans and air-conditioners which save us from heat and cold. Electric bulbs and tubelights give us light. Machinery works with the help of electricity.

**(iii) Means of Transportation and Communication :** Science has made our travels more comfortably now. We have various means of journey. They take us to our destination in a short time comfortably. We have won distance by the use of trains, buses, cars, steamers and planes. In fact, the far off countries have come closer due to quick services of aeroplanes. We can travel thousands of miles in a few hours.

Science has brought a revolutionary change in the field of communications also. Telephone, telegraph and wireless have made the world quite small. Radio and television are the valuable gifts of science.

(iv) **Medical Field** : Science has helped us to fight many fatal diseases like T.B. and Cancer. It has lessened the sufferings and miseries of mankind. Surgery and X-rays are great boons. Science has given eyes to the blind, legs to the lame and ears to the deaf. Diseases like plague, cholera, small pox and malaria have been controlled by the help of science.

(v) **Agriculture** : Better with the help of fertilizers, medicines and better irrigation facilities we can take bumper crops. 'Green Revolution' and 'White Revolution' (milk) have given us a lot.

(vi) **Entertainment and Education** : Science has given us cinema, T.V., radio and many other things. It has given us calculators, robots, cameras and computers. Computer is a great wonder of science. These inventions help in the field of education.

3: **As a Curse** : But this is only one side of the coin. Science has produced many deadlier weapons also and made wars most destructive by bombs and missiles. The world is sitting on a volcano. Any Laden or Hitler may explode it. If the Third World War breaks, it will destroy the whole world by nuclear weapons.

It has been rightly said, "The third world war will be fought with bombs and missiles but the fourth will be fought with stones and arrows." — C.E.M. Joad

4. **Conclusion** : Gandhiji has rightly said, "Science has taught us to fly like birds in the sky and swim like fish in the oceans but it has not taught us how to walk on the earth."

In fact, there is nothing wrong with science. It is up to man, how he uses it. It is a blessing and a curse both. Hence, many should use science for peace and happiness of mankind. It should never be used for war or any other destructive purpose. We can say that science is a good servant but a bad master.

## 6. My Hobby

(M.P. 2022)

Or,

### Your Hobby

"All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy."

1. **Introduction** : Man is not a machine. So he has to take shelter to some hobby or the other. Hobby is a pleasant pastime. It washes away the monotony and gives fresh energy. It is the best use of leisure. It gives mental recreation too.

2. **My Hobby** : There are many kinds of hobbies e.g. singing, dancing, photography, painting, stamp-collection, gardening, hunting and swimming etc. I have taken up gardening as my hobby. I have inculcated a taste for gardening since my childhood. I am very much interested in plants and flowers. I have visited many beautiful gardens situated in big cities.

3. **What I do for my hobby** : I have prepared a small but beautiful garden within the boundary of my house. There are many plants with beautiful flowers. I am very fond of roses. So I have collected fifteen varieties of roses in my garden. There are various other flowers too. Besides this there are small fruit trees. In a small portion of my garden, I grow vegetables also. I work in my garden during my leisure time daily. I prepare beds of plants and water them. I also do grafting and cutting of the unwanted branches. I take great pleasure in these works. Many times I present the fruits and flowers to my friends. When I pluck vegetables for my mother's kitchen, she is very much pleased.

4. **Conclusion** : My hobby is not expensive. I do not spend much on it. Other hobbies like photography etc. are quite expensive. My parents take delight in watching me working in the garden. Gardening is a good exercise also. It keeps my body and mind fit. The beautiful scenery of my small garden attracts everybody who passes by it. The fragrant flowers, the sweet fruits and the tasty vegetables of my garden are valuable wealth to me. I love my garden very much.



**7. An Indian Festival**

(M.P. 2022)

**Or,****The Festival You Like Most**

**1. Introduction :** India is a land of fasts, feasts, fairs and festivals. There is some fair or festival in every month throughout the year. They are mostly religious, social, national or seasonal. Diwali is an important festival celebrated all over the country.

**2. When and Why Celebrated :** Diwali is celebrated on the fifteenth day of the month of Kartik when rains have ended. It marks the advent of winter when the harvest is ready to be reaped. It is said that Ram, the king of Ayodhya returned to his kingdom on this day after his victory over Ravan, the king of Lanka. So people welcomed him by lighting lamps in the city. People illuminate their houses and worship Laxmi, the Goddess of wealth in memory of the same.

**3. Celebrations :** This festival is celebrated with great Joy. People clean their houses, whitewash and decorate them. In the evening the earthen lamps, candle sticks and electric bulbs of different colours are lighted. Crackers are burnt. Goddess Laxmi is worshipped. Sweets are eaten. The merchants open new account-books for their business. Most of the people and children put on new clothes on this auspicious day.

People send greetings to their relatives and friends. 'Diwali Milan' is arranged to meet local friends and relatives who join to enjoy this festival. Usually they forget their mutual enmity and embrace one another with hearty sentiments. Though this is a festival of the Hindus yet people of all communities of the country join in this celebration. Thus this festival increases the feeling of unity and brotherhood.

**4. Conclusion :** But there is a dark aspect too of this great festival. On this day many people gamble. Many times the fireworks result in accidents and children fall prey to burns. These fireworks are costly, and there is a huge wastage of money. If these evils are controlled, this festival brings the message of happy future for all alike.

**8. Importance of Games and Sports**

(M.P. 2019)

**Or****Value of Games.**

(M.P. 2019)

(2002-C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, 03-B<sub>2</sub>, 04-A<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>E, 09, 16, 18 Imp.)**Or****Importance of Games in Student Life**

(M.P. 2014)

**A sound mind lives in a sound body.**

— Aristotle

**"All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy."**

**1. Introduction :** It is said that "Health is Wealth". We can have a sound mind only in a sound body. Games and sports play a very important role in the life of young boys and girls. On one hand they give us recreation and on the other they help in the development of body, mind and personality. They make life charming and useful.

**2. Advantages :** Games and sports impart the real education for future life. Many good qualities are taught by games and sports. Discipline, mutual cooperation, unity and obedience of rules are some of the characteristic features which form the total personality of the youths. A regular habit of playing according to rules becomes a part of their character. Classroom teaching does not impart that vital education which is the impact of games and sports.



Games and sports bring about national and international honours to us. The players and athletes of different countries participate in various games and sports in the world competition. They try to show their skill with utmost vigour. If they win they bring a name for their country.

Games and sports make the growing boys and girls honest and hard working. They learn patience, confidence and courage. Victory and defeat are equal in their view. This sportsmanship makes their future bright. Moreover they form regular habits which lead them on the path of success.

**3. As a profession :** In the modern age games and sports have become profession also. Many skilled players and athletes earn a huge amount of money by competing in various national and international competitions. By virtue of being good players or good athletes, they get jobs. Wherever they go they get honour.

**4. Conclusion :** Thus we see that games and sports are very important for the mental, physical and moral make up of the youths who have to bear great responsibilities for the progress of their country.

## 9. Population Growth

(M.P. 2023)

Since Independence, we have been facing many problems. They are challenge to us as a developing nation. Problem of population is one of them. The population of our country is increasing day by day.

Our population today is above 100 crores, second only to China. It is growing at a rate of 2% p.a. This is our greatest headache.

There are various causes for the growth of population. The main cause of the problem is illiteracy. People do not realize that a large population is a problem. Also, better medical facilities have brought death-rate down. Child mortality has also come down. Child marriages and marriages at an early age also add to the problem.

The problem can be felt everywhere our schools, colleges and hospitals are over crowded, so are buses and trains. Public services find it impossible to cop-up with this load. Unemployment is also one of the bitter results of the problem. This breeds frustration and anger among the youth. Crimes and anti-social activities are on an increase.

In ancient times, the population was automatically controlled by natural calamity, war earthquake, storm, floods, starvation etc. It is the age of science. There are many scientific methods to control over population. Family planning medicines operation and other devices.

By education, people can be very well educated to adopt family planning with the help of government hospitals.

There are other devices also. People should exercise self-restraint in their married life. People should also marry late. The success of family planning depends on the proper education of people. Family planning is the only right method of control and check the growing population. If family planning is properly introduced in the urban and rural areas, it will solve many social and economical problems.

The government has done a lot of educated people in this regard but it has not helped much. Many NGO'S are also working in this field. The problem can be solved only with the spread, of education. We all must work at it. It is a serious problem and we can't progress unless it is effectively solved.



## 10. Women Empowerment

(M.P. 2023)

From the day of creation woman has remained a partner with man at every step. Now in the last part of 20th century it has become very much essential to survey the role of woman in society. The society has ever since grown with women at the helm of every affairs. At present the various women organization have started functioning widely to review the role of women.

For ages women had been behind the door but actively managing household affairs. This is still continuing in most part of the world where feminist organization have not sow their black seeds. Woman's role is so defined that it is almost to manage a family without their help. Both the Aryan and Dravidian culture are marked by their emphasis on woman's is worshipped. In ancient India, woman was always respected. The great woman like Gargi, Apala, Lopamudra had earned acclaim of Rishis for their intelligence and knowledge.

Even in the society today role of woman has not declined in any sense. But the growth of education and changing money minded society has brought a change in out look. Today's educated woman is no more interested to stay behind doors with ordinary culinary jobs. For her taking care of child is no more a challenging and interesting job. For economic freedom she is out their in the market or the offices.

Active participation of women in nation building is ever invited. Because without their help we just cannot think of growing. Now-a-days every field of action is being traversed by woman. Nowhere, it can be said that she has failed the man. From driving a motor to piloting an aeroplane and from household management to management of scientific laboratory she has perfectly managed everywhere. Even in the field of arts and culture she has shined brilliantly forever.

However, it is a matter of regret that due to some ferministic ideas woman has started thinking about herself in a different angle. This has created a rift in her mind about her equality or superiority with man. There have been a number of instances where many women have neglected their families for such unearthly petty ideas. For the development of society, role of woman is indispensable. She is and shall continue to be the inspiration behind every creation. So women must not forget their great role as mother and creator and manager.

## 11. Electric Vehicles

(M.P. 2023)

**Introduction :** Electric vehicles are means of transport that consume electric energy as fuel instead of traditional fuel such as petrol, diesel, or CNG. These vehicles one powered with a battery, solar panels, or an electric generator to convert fuel to electricity. Electric bikes, electric cars, electric rickshaws, etc. are some examples of electric vehicles. Most of trains including metros are already running worldwide through electricity.

**Need of Electric Vehicles :** Electric vehicles are the need of the hour. There are many factors which create need for use of electric vehicles. Some of them are :

1. To reduce pollution.
2. To conserve non-renewable natural resources.
3. To reduce import of petrol and dieset.
4. To reduce global warming.
5. To promote use of renewable energy.
6. To fulfill the need of growing demand of more means of transport.

**Benefits of electric vehicles use :** We all are living in an advance era of technology. Advancement of technology always helps for betterment of human life. Use of electric vehicles are very much useful for human as well as for environment in many ways some of these are :

1. Electric vehicles do not emit smoke, thus they are helpful for reducing pollution.
2. Using electric vehicles will reduce global warming.
3. Use of electric vehicles can be helpful for conservation of natural resources.
4. Electric vehicles eco-friendly. Use of electric vehicles is good for environment as well as human life.
5. The new technology of electric vehicle will generate employment for youth.
6. Electric vehicles will reduce the dependency of the nation on petroleum export countries.

**Conclusion :** Electric vehicles are the future of 'means of transport'. It becomes necessary when we think about the growing pollution, pollution born diseases and global warming. Government is also promoting continuously the use of electric vehicles. Citizens of a developing country, must think sincerely about using electric vehicles.



## 12. Disadvantages of Social Media

(M.P. 2023)

**Introduction :** Social media has become an integral part of our life. Million of people have been using Face Book, WhatsApp, Instagram, and so on. While there are many advantages to social media like connecting with friends and family, staying informed about current events, and promoting a product, there are some disadvantages which can not be ignored.

**Addictive :** Social media can be addictive, and if some body has become addictive to some social media, it can be very tough to break the habit. He might find himself checking his phone compulsively. We need to be mindful to the amount of time, we spend on social media. We need also be careful about the content we consume. We must also remember to stay connected with real-life friends and family.

**Adverse Effects on Health :** Excessive use of mobile phone and staying on social media may result in bad health, weakened physicality, depression, stress, anxiety and many more health related issues. Thus, it is much necessary to use mobile phone as well social media mindfully and carefully.

**Time consuming :** Social media consumes a lot of time. Staying connected and scrolling on a particular social media can consume much time, if we are not aware of the time. We can use this time in doing more productive things.

**Suffer Academic performance :** Social media can have a negative impact on academic performance. It is because students, when using social media, donot spend proper time on their studies. These students also struggle with focus and concentration while studying. So it is advisable to avoid social media, if someone wants to be focused.

**Conclusion :** The world of social media is a virtual world. It is not real. Social media tends to show only the best parts of life. Making it hard to remember that what we see is not always reality. So we must live in the real world, with real friends and relative, as well to limit social media use as much as possible.



## ARTICLE WRITING

**Q. 1.** Manish is writing an article on 'Ice cream' for the school magazine. He referred to an encyclopedia and made the following notes. (Use the information in the notes to complete his article) :

**Origin :** China-Circa 2000 B.C., brought to Europe by Marco Polo in 13<sup>th</sup> Century, English colonists took recipe to US in 18<sup>th</sup> Century.

**Manufacture :** Earlier, ingredients placed in metal containers surrounded by ice and salt mixture. Now, ingredients mixed, pasteurized, homogenized, cooled, frozen, beaten until smooth.

**Types :** Parfait, mousses — not beaten during freezing, Tortoni — sprinkled with powdered dry fruits, spumoni mousses + fruit and nuts, lolly-water Ice cream on stick.

**Ans.**

### Ice Cream

Ice cream is a popular frozen confection made from fat, milk solids, and sugar. Ice cream probably originated in China around 2000 BC. The recipe for water ices was first brought to Europe by the Italian traveller Marco Polo in the late 13<sup>th</sup> century, with ice cream becoming popular in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. English colonists took the recipe to the United States in the early 18<sup>th</sup> century.

Early production methods consisted on placing the ingredients in metal containers, surrounded by a freezing mixture of ice and coarse salt, and mixing them until smooth. In modern plants the basic ingredients are poured into a tank, where they are mixed and pasteurized. The mixture is then homogenized to break up particles of butterfat, cooled, piped to a freezing tank, and beaten until smooth; at this stage nuts or fruits are sometimes added. The ice cream emerges from the freezing tank partially frozen and is packed into containers that are stored in a garret room until hard.

Several forms of ice cream are made. French ice cream is enriched with egg yolks; *parfaits* and *mousses* are ice cream preparations that have not been beaten during the freezing process; *biscuit tortoni* is a rich ice cream sprinkled with powdered almonds or macaroons; and *spumoni* is a *mousse*-like ice cream to which fruits and nuts have been added. Soft ice cream, made of the same ingredients as ordinary ice cream, is sold as it comes from the freezer before hardening. An ice lolly is frozen ice cream or water ice on a stick.

**Q. 2.** You are Prakash Ojha of class XI. You observe that there is a steep decline in reading habits amongst children. The major cause for this is the T.V. Write an article in the newspaper on, "Ways to promote reading".

**Ans.**

### Ways to Promote Reading

The habits of children are changing with the change and advancements science has brought in the society. Earlier the pass time for children were books but with the advancements and new discoveries television has took the place of books. As today the scene is, there are more than 100 channels. Children get booked with the cartoon channels most of their time, schools, teachers and parents must take initiative to promote reading habits. There should be compulsory library hours for students. Apart from course books, story books reading can also be promoted. Children must be explained importance of reading. Reading must be made interesting.

**Q. 3.** You are Ajay Mathur. You happened to see the following lines up a newspaper.

### Motorcyclist injured in Road Accident

**Free Press News Service**

**Ujjain**

**A fast moving jeep on Friday rammed into a motorcyclist rendering him seriously injured. The accident occurred at Panbihar. According to sources the jeep first rammed into the motorcyclist and then dashed into an electric pole.**

**Meanwhile, the police have arrested the driver of the jeep and the injured motorcyclist was admitted to civil hospital.**



You decide to write an article in the local daily titled "License to drive is not license to kill". Write the article in about 150-200 words.

**Ans. License to Drive is Not License to Kill**

With the increase in population, the amount of traffic is naturally increasing. Big cities are becoming bigger and more crowded. Life has become very fast. Everybody seems to be in a hurry. Drivers use their strength at the accelerator in order to reach their destination as soon as possible.

Due to overspeeding, there has been a great increase in accidents. There are some other reasons also. For example, people have now become less tolerant. They lack self discipline.

A driver with a bigger vehicle takes it as a challenge if someone with a smaller one overtakes him. Then a race begins between the two, and the natural result is a serious accident. Due to the fast pace of life, we remain under stress all the time. There is stress due to family issues. There is stress due to work related issues. And then, there is a climatic effect also. In hot countries like India, people are prone to have a hot temper. And then there is another reason. There are no stringent penalties for those who break the traffic rules. In the absence of severe penalties, people ignore traffic rules at their will.

The cure of each ill lies in removing the causes. Therefore, we should avoid road rage and be disciplined motorists. We should know traffic rules and be courteous to fellow drivers. If we have an appointment, we should start well in time. We shouldn't carry any stress while driving.

Written by  
Ajay Mathur

**Q. 4. You are Rohit residing 11/C, R.T.S. Colony, Bilaspur. Recently you have attended a seminar on "Road Safety Movement" organized by the Rotary Club of your district. Write an article on this seminar.**

**Ans. Road Safety Movement**

A seminar was conducted by the Rotary Club of Bilaspur on 'Road safety movement'. The seminar was attended by more than 500 people all over the state. The purpose of the seminar was to bring about awareness among people regarding the road safety measures, which could minimise the accident and reckless driving on roads. The experts from traffic police and officials concerned conducted the meeting with the Rotary Club member. The seminar was praised by the people who joined it. The 'Road safety movement' should be encouraged in each city to make it safe and beautiful.

**Q. 5. With the help of the words given below, produce a write up on the advantages of small family.**

(i) Population growth, (ii) Problems of a large family, (iii) One or two children, (iv) Better facilities, (v) Enjoy life.

**Ans. Advantages of Small Family**

Population growth is the great problem in our progressing country. Today, in a family if there are more than five persons, parents can not afford to give them proper education, clothes, and food. If any family has one or two children parent can provide them better facilities and they can live life with full enjoy. So it is clear that if we have a small family we can enjoy our life and educate our children better and provide them all types of enjoyment. It is so clear that where is a small family, there is happiness.



**Q. 6. Every activity that man indulges in creates waste of some kind. Some of the waste can be recycled or reused. In fact the need of the hour is to conserve the earth's resources in all possible ways. Write an article on the topic 'Conservation, Need of the Hour' in 150-200 words. You are Brinda, a keen environmentalist.**

Or,

Four rules of saving environment are Recycling, Reusing, Reducing and Refusing. Write an article in 150-200 words on how students can make use of these rules in their lives and save the environment. Make use of the clues given below :

- (i) Unusual plastic, paper and glass articles to be sold for recycling.
- (ii) Rough work to be done on blank sides of old exercise books.
- (iii) Make minimum use of everything - water for washing and bathing, electricity at home and at school.
- (iv) Refuse to buy anything more than what you really need.

**Ans. Conservation-Need of The Hour**

— By Brinda

Conservation which is a basic necessity for healthy living has become a luxury in many Indian households, especially in semi-urban and rural areas. Conservation is inevitable. If we have to survive, it is necessary that each one of us works towards conservation. Nature has fulfilled all our needs and yet we are so cruel and savage that we have forgotten our responsibilities. We have a limited supply of resources. Hence, it is very important for us to use them judiciously. If we don't realise the need to conserve now, the earth may be devoid of all life in a few years. It will be a dirty and barren wasteland, with the sun blazing over the vast expanse of desert.

Conservation should become a religious duty. It is our foremost duty to protect the benefactor of our existence on this planet-Nature. We can save our environment from being polluted. Also we can make it worth living through our best efforts. By recycling bits of paper and torn clothes we can prepare paper, cardboard and toys. The waste steel can also be melted to give it a proper shape. If we think in a positive way we can use all the waste things and recycle them. So let us make a resolution to conserve the earth's resources in all the possible ways so that we may be able to use the resources in future.

**Q. 7. India is a tourist's paradise. But we have not really exploited our tourism possibilities. Write an article in 125-150 words on 'Tourism in India'. You are Ravi / Rani.**

**Ans. Tourism In India**

— By Ravi

There are many tourists places in India, as it has the glorious past. Now these tourists places are the main economic source of India. India's rich cultural heritage, ancient monuments, world famous temples, architectural masterpieces, wild animal sanctuaries and scenic spots, holds a great attraction for the foreigners to visit. Our states are having enough chances of tourism. In earlier times it was treated like an industry but in present scenario the situation has been altered. Now we people are enjoying a unique range of tourist services. The survey of world tourism organisation depicts our prestigious status among other countries. Some states like Goa, Rajasthan, Kerala and Haryana have well done in tourism development.

Earlier, there was the lack of trained man-power and the lack of awareness in the tourism development. One thing is very important to heed over our hospitality towards the foreigners. They should not get frustrated and disappointed at any cost. Hence, it is very important to check the touts who misinterpret and cheat the tourist. Since we have a vast potential in tourism, we must behave with the foreigners as "Atithi Devo Bhava", as they are our guests. In this way we can attract the tourists round the year to exchange the cultural relations and monetary transaction.



## PARAGRAPH WRITING

### 1. Importance of English

(M.P. 2022, 23)

English is an international language and all across the world most of people understand this language. There is so much importance in learning English. If you are a good English speaker. You can communicate with anyone internationally which will help you to learn more and explore more.

Suppose you are visiting a foreign country due to study or tour. It is not possible to learn every language, but if you know English, you can communicate with them. Most of the people in this world understand English. Without good skill in English, you can't pursue a higher education degree.

### 2. COVID-19

COVID-19 is a disease caused by the novel corona virus whose symptoms are fever, dry cough, breathing difficulties etc. Some patients have nose actions and runny nose, soar throat and diarrhoea.

COVID-19 mainly spread by droplets produced as a result of coughing and sneezing of infected person. So, avoid direct contact with the patient. If we do not cover our face from coughing and sneezing, we may get infected. Scientists say that virus survives on surface and clothes for many days.

Our government has been implementing different measures to protect people from the disease. Corona tests are done on symptomatic patients. Social distancing is must to minimise the patients. It is our responsibility to take care of ourselves and support the corona warriors in these fight against COVID-19. Hand wash is very common practice in this regard. We must follow the proverb "Prevention is better than cure" to avoid COVID-19 from spreading in our earth.

### 3. Online Education

(M.P. 2023)

Education is an integral part of people's lives. It will either make them or break them into the prospect depending on their careers. Online education is called E-learning. In this kind of learning, the students study from home or from any other place. Online education is an amenable instructional delivery process that includes learning that takes place via the internet.

People round the globe are suffering from COVID-19. Earlier, degree courses or higher education were only online. Now a days, in this grim situation of pandemic online classes have become the need of time for small children too. Teachers optimise the timelessness and focus of the learning curriculum while students are able to fit learning time into their schedule. Because of this online education, students have become more computer friendly, they are technologically updated now.

Among the advantages of online learning, there are the responsibility and self-discipline of students too.

### 4. Save Water

(M.P. 2022)

As we all know that water is the most important and valuable natural resource on Earth. It sustains all life. There is no life without water. About 71% of Earth's surface is covered with water, but unfortunately only 3% of the water available is fresh water. Out of this small portion of water, we have a very small quantity of it in form of ground water and surface water. So it is our foremost duty or responsibility to save and conserve this water, not only for us but also for our future generations. Each drop of it is vital for our existence. That's why it is said "SAVE WATER SAVE LIFE"



## IV. PICTURE GUIDED COMPOSITIONS

Q. 1. See the following pictures and write about it in about 60-75 words each :



(1)

### 1. Importance of cleanliness

**Ans.** The picture shows two workers cleaning the road. Their work is very important. Dirty surroundings can make us ill. They bring diseases. It is the responsibility of all of us to keep our surroundings clean. We should not throw garbage here and there. It should be put in the dustbins. A clean environment not only keeps us healthy, it makes us happy also. I support this initiative of the government.

### 2. Family is everything

A family consists of father, mother, son(s) and daughter(s). The bond of love binds the family. Children learn the lessons of life in the family. They understand the value of cooperation. Father is the bread-earner in the family but the mother is the manager. They both share responsibilities. They both take care of children and make them ready for life.

Q. 2. Write a short paragraph of about 75 words based on the given picture.

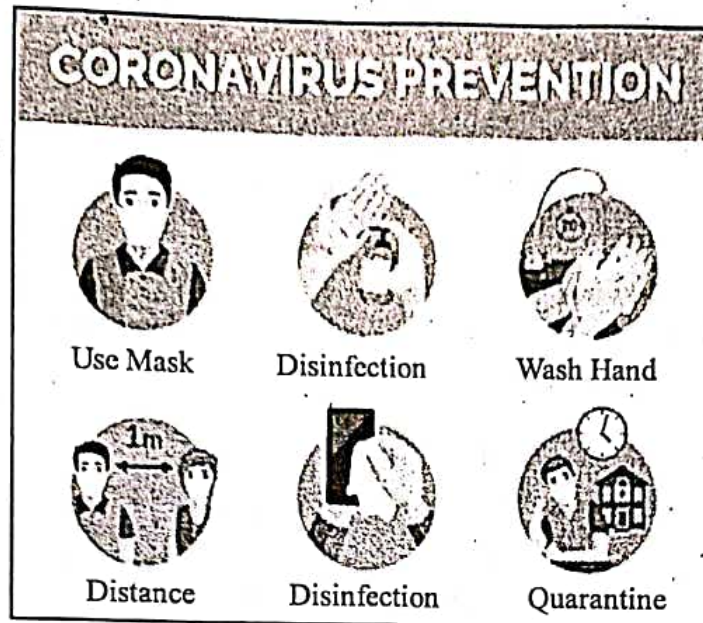


**Ans.**

### Water pollution

We have a lot of water but we cannot use much of it because it is polluted. Water is polluted by factories and big industries. Municipal waste also pollutes water. If it continues we will have no safe water to drink. It is therefore necessary to save our sources of water like rivers, lakes and wells from water pollution. If we don't take care, water will be scarce, we may then need to buy it from shops. Life will be very difficult with scarcity of drinking water.

Q. 3. On the basis of the picture given below, describe how we can prevent ourselves from Covid-19.



Ans.

### Covid-19 Prevention

In the case of infections pandemic like corona virus, prevention is always better than cure. So we should follow Corona guidelines :

- 1. Wash your hands frequently :** Use soap and water or alcohol based sanitizer at least for 20 second.
- 2. Do not gather in groups :** Being in a group as gathering makes it more likely that you'll be in close contact with someone.
- 3. Wear a mask :** When use correctly these mask can help prevent people from transmission of virus.
- 4. Take social distancing seriously :** If you must go out for necessities keep a distance of 6 feet from other people.
- 5. Shop shaking hands :** Avoid touching other people. Skin-to-skin contact can transmits virus one person to another. Take care and stay safe.

Q. 4. On the basis of the picture given below, describe how we can keep ourselves fit and healthy ?





**Ans. Act healthy, Be healthy, Eat healthy**

Staying fit and healthy plays an important role in our life. People neglect their health because of hectic daily schedules but there are little things that you can do each day that will add to being healthy and fit.

**1. Exercise regularly :** Exercise is important for being fit and healthy. One should walk for few minutes everyday to stay fit.

**2. Eat healthy food :** Eat lots of fresh fruits, vegetable and whole grains to stay healthy and fit. One should eat balance meal and not overeat. Junkfood should be strictly avoided.

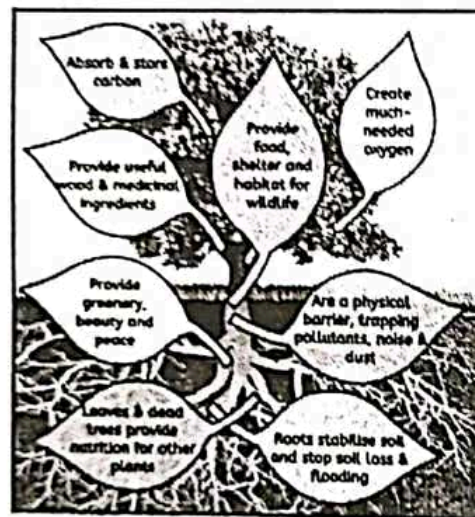
**3. Drink more water :** Water helps in keeping our bodies hydrated to maintain a healthy body. It is natural cleanser for our organs and digestive system.

**4. Reduce stress :** Stress is not good as it harms the body and cause a myriad problem from heart trouble to digestive problem.

“Happiness lies, first of all in health”.

— *Georg William Curtis*

**Q. 5. On the basis of the picture given below, write a short paragraph about the importance of trees.**



**Ans.**

**Importance of Trees**

Trees are a very important part of our nature. It is very important to keep our environment beautiful and clean. Trees make a place green and beautiful. Trees absorb carbon dioxide and provide us oxygen that is important to take breath. It provides fruits, vegetables and many types of food as well as several types of medicines.

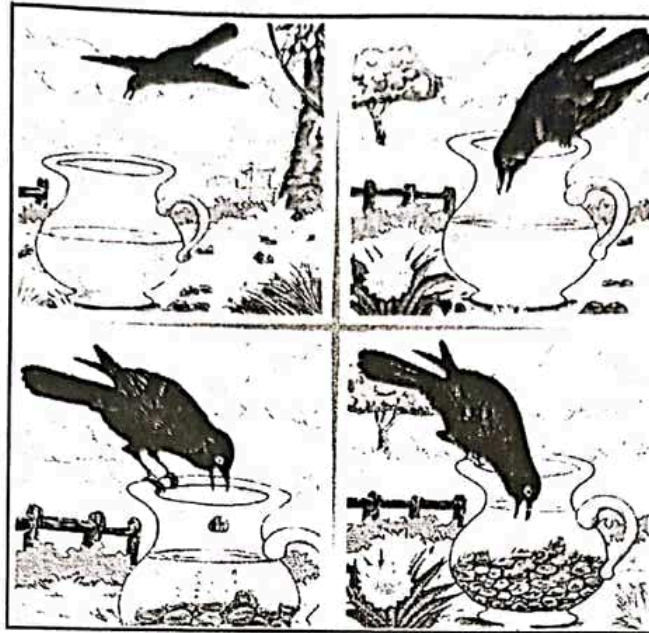
Trees provide shelter and habitat for wildlife which saves them from heat and sun.

Trees give us wood which we use for furniture and as a fuel. Trees cause rainfall. They protect the environment from pollution by reducing the amount of atmospheric gas.

Trees protect human life from natural disaster. In the situation of floods and river erosion the tree holds the soil with its roots. Leaves of trees also provide nutrition for other plants.

We should plant lots of trees and take care of those trees.

**Q. 6. On the basis of the picture given below, write a short story in about 75 words and also give a suitable title to it.**

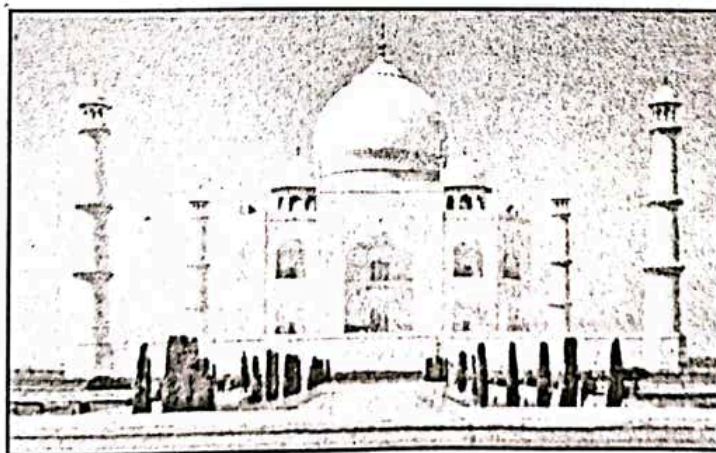


**Ans.**

### **Thirsty Crow**

It was a hot summer day. A crow was very thirsty. He flew from one place to another in search of water. But there was not a drop of water anywhere. All the ponds and ditches had dried up. The crow flew a long distance and was tired. Suddenly he saw a pitcher under a tree. The crow flew down and sat on the pitcher. He looked into the pitcher. The pitcher had a little water. But the crow could not reach it. He looked around and saw some pebbles. He picked up the pebbles one by one with his beak. He dropped them into the pitcher. Soon the water came up to the mouth of the pitcher. The crow drank the water and flew away happily.

**Q. 7. Look at the visual input given below and produce a small description about it. Write in 75 words.** (M.P. 2022)



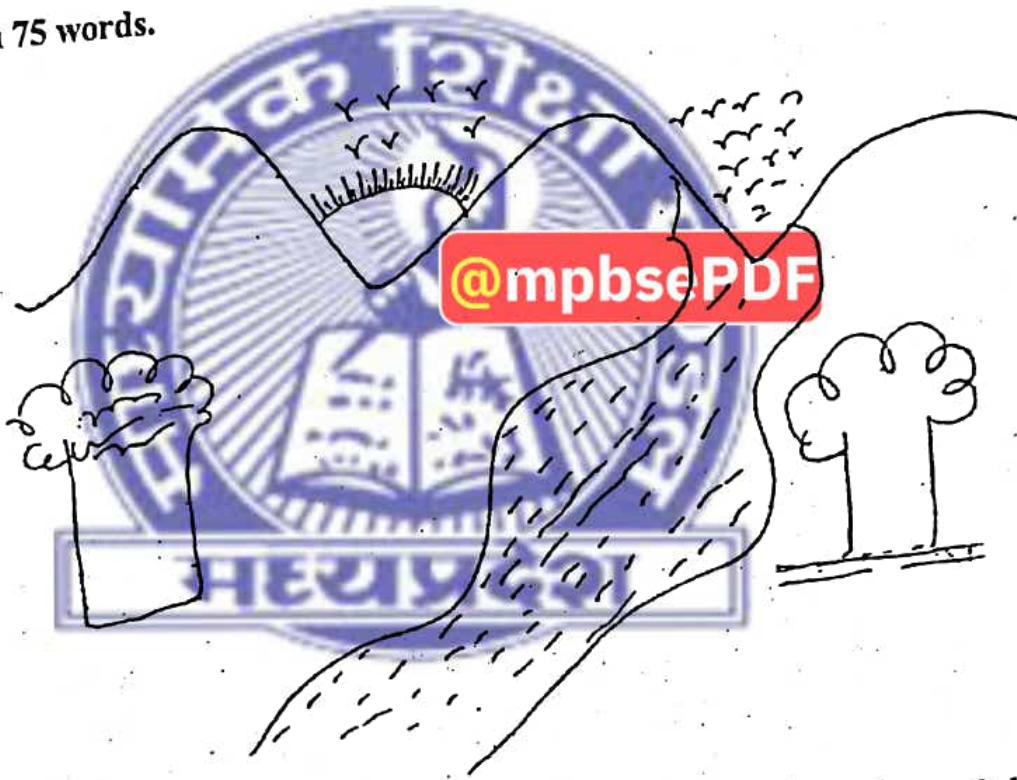


### The Taj Mahal

Ans.

The figure shows the picture of the Taj Mahal. It was built between 1632 and 1653 by two Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan, the fifth one of the Mughal Empire. It was built to commemorate his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal who died of childbirth complications. It is situated in Agra on the bank of the river Yamuna. The Tajmahal is the best example of Mughal architecture. Its chief architect is said to be Ustad Ahmad Lahouri, who is also credited with the design of the famous Red Fort of Delhi. It is made of pure white marble. Its construction took over twenty years. It is estimated to have cost 32 millions rupees.

Q. 8. Look at the visual input given below and produce a small assumption about it write in 75 words.  
(M.P. 2023)



Ans. This sketch shows the scene of a beautiful landscape. It is the scene of a beautiful sunrise in the hilly area. Birds are flying in the sky. Rising sun is looking beautiful. The stream of a river is coming down from the hills. There are trees on the both sides of the river. Thus the scene is fascinating.

## GRAMMAR

### 1. TENSES

There are three verb tenses in English—Present, Past and Future. Each of these tenses can take four main aspects; Simple, Continuous or Progressive, Perfect and Perfect continuous. Let's look at the different verb tenses in the following tabular detail to enhance your English language skills.

| S.No. | Tense                      | Verb form                                  | Common use  | Example  |
|-------|----------------------------|--|---|--|
| 1.    | Present simple             | V <sub>1</sub> or V <sub>1</sub> +s/es     | present habit   | We play cricket daily.                         |
| 2.    | Past simple                | V <sub>2</sub>                             | habit in past or any past event.                                | She played cricket.                            |
| 3.    | Future simple              | will/shall +V <sub>1</sub>                 | event to take place in future                                   | 'I will play cricket tomorrow.                 |
| 4.    | Present continuous         | is/are/am+V <sub>1</sub> +ing              | an action in progress at present                                | I am reading a book. (now)                     |
| 5.    | Past continuous            | was/were +V <sub>1</sub> +ing              | an action in progress in the past                               | I was reading a book yesterday.                |
| 6.    | Future continuous          | will/shall be+V <sub>1</sub> +ing          | action that will be in progress in future.                      | She will be writing a letter.                  |
| 7.    | Present perfect            | have/has +V <sub>3</sub>                   | action completed just before present                            | I have completed my work.                      |
| 8.    | Past perfect               | had +V <sub>3</sub>                        | action completed in the past.                                   | She had written a letter.                      |
| 9.    | Future perfect             | will/shall+have +V <sub>3</sub>            | action to be completed in future.                               | I will have completed the work.                |
| 10.   | Present perfect continuous | have/has been +V (ing)                     | action started in past and continuing to present.               | She has been writing for three hours.          |
| 11.   | Past perfect continuous    | had been +V <sub>1</sub> (ing)             | action started in past and continuing to another point in past. | We had been walking for two hours.             |
| 12.   | Future perfect continuous  | will/shall have been +V <sub>1</sub> (ing) | action starting in present and going up to a point in future.   | I will have been working here for three years. |

V<sub>1</sub> = 1st form of verb, V<sub>2</sub> = 2nd form of verb, V<sub>3</sub> = 3rd form of verb.



## PRACTICE EXERCISES

(A) Fill in the blanks with suitable tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

- (i) It has been ..... since morning. (rain)  
 (ii) The examination ..... at 9 :00 sharp. (start)  
 (iii) Mother is ..... the clothes. (wash)  
 (iv) I ..... my work in the morning before going to school. (complete)  
 (v) They ..... been quarrelling for a week. (have)

(B) Choose the correct verb forms to fill in the blanks.

- (i) She has ..... the truth. (speaks/spoke/spoken)  
 (ii) I was ..... a book. (read/reads/reading)  
 (iii) Chintan will not ..... the teacher. (asks/asked/ask)  
 (iv) It had been ..... since morning. (rain/raining/rained)  
 (v) We are .....hard for the examination. (work/works/working)

(C) Underline the mistake and write the correct word in place as in the example :

Example : She has wrote a letter.

Ans. Written.

- (i) He will not going to Agra.  
 (ii) She has not been cut trees.  
 (iii) Chunnilal will have been sung a song.  
 (iv) Radhika was sing a song tomorrow.  
 (v) Chintu are cutting a tree.  
 (vi) Saksham had make a mistake.  
 (vii) I shall helped him.

Ans. (A) (i) raining, (ii) starts, (iii) washing, (iv) completed, (v) had.

(B) (i) spoken, (ii) reading, (iii) ask, (iv) raining, (v) working.

(C) (i) going — go, (ii) cut — cutting

(iii) sung — singing, (iv) sing — singing

(v) are — is, (vi) make — made, (vii) helped — help.

## 2. MODALS

### Use of modals

| S.No. | Modal              | Usage   |
|-------|--------------------|---|
| 1.    | can                | ability in the present, informal permission.                                    |
| 2.    | could              | ability in the past, (Thus, it is the past tense of can).                       |
| 3.    | must               | obligation (compulsion) used only in present/future tense.                      |
| 4.    | must not           | negative obligation (used only in present/future tense)                         |
| 5.    | had to             | obligation in the past  |
| 6.    | will/shall have to | obligation in the future. (useful to show future obligation.)                   |
| 7.    | should             | as past tense of 'shall' in indirect speech.                                    |
| 8.    | should             | advice, suggestion, obligation  |
| 9.    | will/shall         | future (as studied in the topic on tenses).                                     |
| 10.   | would              | as past tense of will generally in indirect speech.                             |
| 11.   | ought to           | moral obligation  |
| 12.   | may                | permission/possibility.   |
| 13.   | might              | as past tense of 'may'/ slighter possibility.                                   |
| 14.   | need               | only used in interrogative/negative e.g., needn't showing absence of obligation |
| 15.   | dare               | only used in interrogative/negative.  |

**Main features of modals :**

- (i) They are always used with a principal verb in the first form.  
e.g., She can work from home.
- (ii) Same form of modal is used with all forms of nouns, singular or plural.  
e.g., (a) You must obey elders.  
(b) They must obey elders.  
(c) She must obey elders.
- (iii) Two modals are never used together.

**PRACTICE EXERCISES**

**(A) Fill in the blanks with modals as directed :**

- (i) We ..... run when we were children. (ability)
- (ii) You ..... open the door. (permission)
- (iii) Students ..... complete the assignment. (obligation)
- (iv) You ..... work too hard. (absence of obligation)
- (v) We ..... cross the road when the traffic signal is red. (negative obligation)
- (vi) She ..... oppose her parents. (absence of courage)

**(B) Fill in the blanks with suitable modals.**

- (i) Our Principal ..... be 65 but he is quite fit.
- (ii) You ..... be late for dinner.
- (iii) We ..... respect our soldiers.
- (iv) How ..... you talk to me so rudely?
- (v) ..... you speak French. No, I .....
- (vi) You ..... read this novel. It is an adventure story.
- (vii) ..... his soul rest in peace !
- (viii) I ..... leave now or I ..... miss the train.
- (ix) ..... I go now, sir ?

**Ans. (A)** (i) could, (ii) may, (iii) must, (iv) needn't, (v) must not, (vi) daren't

**(B)** (i) must, (ii) must not, (iii) must, (iv) dare, (v) can, cannot, (vi) must, (vii) may, (viii) must, will, (ix) may.

**3. PASSIVE VOICE**

- (i) A passive voice sentence starts with the object.
- (ii) The verb form is changed.
- (iii) 'by+subject' is put in the last of the sentence.
- (iv) The verb in active is changed in passive-voice.

| S.No. | Tense form in active voice  | Tense form in passive voice                          |
|-------|---|--|
| 1.    | Present simple : 1st form of the verb/<br>1st form of the verb + s/es | is/are/am + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb.        |
| 2.    | Past simple : 2nd form of the verb.                                   | was/were + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb          |
| 3.    | Future simple : will/shall + 1st form<br>of the verb                  | will/shall be + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb     |
| 4.    | Present continuous : is/are/am +<br>1st form of the verb + ing.       | is/are/am + being + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb |



|     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| 5.  | Past continuous : was/were + 1st form of the verb + ing.                          | was/were + being + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb.   |
| 6.  | Future continuous : will/shall be + 1st form of the verb + ing.                   | No passive   |
| 7.  | Present perfect have/has + 3rd form of the verb                                   | have/has + been + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb.  |
| 8.  | Past perfect :<br>had + 3rd form of the verb.                                     | had + been + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb.<br>Will/shall have been + 3 <sup>rd</sup> form of the verb. |
| 9.  | Future perfect<br>will/shall have + 3rd form of the verb.                         | } No Passive   |
| 10. | Present perfect continuous<br>have/has + been + 1st form of the verb + ing        |  |
| 11. | Past perfect continuous<br>had + been + 1st form of the verb + ing                |  |
| 12. | Future perfect continuous<br>will/shall have + been + 1st form of the verb + ing. |  |

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

**(A) Fill in the blanks to complete the sentences.**

- (i) Diwali ..... celebrated in India.
- (ii) Mother ..... be surprised to hear this.
- (iii) The trees ..... been cut.
- (iv) The girl ..... harassed by her classmates.
- (v) You ..... be given an award.
- (vi) The car was ..... driven by Rohan.
- (vii) Sheru ..... pleased with his success.
- (viii) Books ..... being written by Mr. Shastri.
- (ix) He had ..... worrying for sometime.
- (x) Rules must not ..... broken.

**(B) Change into passive voice :**

- (i) She closed the window.
- (ii) We are playing cricket.
- (iii) Don't lock the door.
- (iv) Who killed the merchant ? [MP Board Education Youtube Channel](#)
- (v) When did you buy the book ?
- (vi) Did she make mistakes ?
- (vii) Somebody stole my purse.
- (viii) They say that he is very rich.
- (ix) Medha has written a book.
- (x) Mother was cooking dinner.
- (xi) Do you like coffee ?
- (xii) Why have you beaten the boy ?
- (xiii) Please don't make a noise.
- (xiv) She can speak French.

(xv) You will speak the truth.

**Ans. (A)** (i) is, (ii) will, (iii) has/had, (iv) was, (v) will, (vi) being, (vii) is/was, (viii) are/were, (ix) been, (x) be.

**(B)** (i) The window was closed by her.

(ii) Cricket is being played by us.

(iii) Let the door not be locked.

(iv) By whom was the merchant killed ?

(v) When was the book bought by you ?

(vi) Were mistakes made by her ?

(vii) My purse was stolen.

(viii) It is said that he is very rich.

(ix) A book has been written by Medha.

(x) Dinner was being cooked by mother.

(xi) Is coffee liked by you ?

(xii) Why has the boy been beaten by you ?

(xiii) You are requested not to make a noise.

(xiv) French can be spoken by her.

(xv) The truth will be spoken by you.

#### 4. SUBJECT – VERB – CONCORD (AGREEMENT)

The term 'subject-verb-agreement' implies that in a sentence the verb must agree with its subject, and the number. We already have a good idea of this from our study of tenses.

A quick revision will help :

| S.No. | Subject   | Verb   |
|-------|---|--|
| 1.    | He, She, It/any name<br>(e.g., Ram, Sunita)<br>uncountable nouns. | is, was, has first form of the verb + s/es,<br>does, did |
| 2.    | They/we/you or any plural<br>(boys, plants)                       | are, were, have. first form of the verb do,<br>did       |
| 3.    | I   | am, was, have, do, did first form of the verb.           |

#### PRACTICE EXERCISES

Choose the correct form of the verbs given in the bracket :

- (i) She ..... reading a book. (is/are)
- (ii) Each of these books ..... a story. (tell/tells)
- (iii) Very few boys ..... good English. (speak/speaks)
- (iv) Neither Mohan nor the boys ..... in the class. (is/are)
- (v) The politician and author ..... died. (have/has)
- (vi) Both Ram and Shyam ..... singing. (is/are)
- (vii) English and Hindi ..... my favourite subjects. (is/are)
- (viii) Either Pradeep or Sameer ..... lying. (is/are)
- (ix) My father won Rs. 100/- which ..... a big sum for us. (was/were)
- (x) Twenty kilometers ..... a short distance. (is/are)
- (xi) Suman and Gagan ..... here. (lives/live)
- (xii) Either Laxmi or Ketan ..... the bill. (pay/pays)
- (xiii) A group of donkeys ..... grazing. (is/are)
- (xiv) The jury ..... divided over the verdict. (is/are)



- (xv) Our team ... ..... hard to win matches. (work/works)  
 Ans. (i) is, (ii) tells, (iii) speak, (iv) are, (v) has, (vi) are, (vii) are, (viii) is, (ix) was, (x) is, (xi) live,  
 (xii) pays, (xiii) is, (xiv) are, (xv) works.

## 5. REPORTING OR INDIRECT NARRATION

Indirect narration is used when we need to report what someone said. If we use the exact word it is direct narration.

However, indirect narration makes it easier.

In changing from direct to indirect narration following changes are to be made.

(i) Reporting verb say/says/said changes as follows.

|               | Type of sentence |                                    |
|---------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| say/says/said | statement        | tell/tells/told                    |
| ""            | questions        | asked, enquired                    |
| ""            | imperative       | advised, ordered, suggested        |
| ""            | optative         | wished,                            |
| ""            | exclamation      | exclaimed with joy/sorrow/surprise |

(ii) Also, when the sentence is in past tense (usual), the words showing **nearness** are changed into words showing **distance**.

e.g. (a) this-that, (b) these-those, (c) here -there, (d) now-then, (e) today-that day, (f) tomorrow-the next day, (g) yesterday-the day before.

**Modals** are also changed as given below :

(a) can-could, (b) may-might, (c) will/shall-would, (d) may-might, (e) must/ought to/ have to-had to.

(iii) Connectors used to connect the two parts of the sentence are /statements :that

yes/no questions : if/whether

wh-questions : the question word, e.g., when/where/why.

(iv) Questions are reported as statements

e.g. She said, "Why are you crying?"

She asked why she was crying.

(v) In exclamations : Use the verbs '**exclaimed with sorrow/joy/wonder**' and complete the sentence with '**that**'.

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- (i) He says, "I will go to Agra."  
 (ii) She said to me, "I am tired."  
 (iii) Mother said to Ram, "What have you studied today?"  
 (iv) Chintu said to Mala, "Please forgive me."  
 (v) Rohan said to Mohan, "Don't fight in the class."  
 (vi) Ram said to Secta, "Are you not feeling well?"  
 (vii) The teacher said to the class, "Open your books."  
 (viii) She said, "Oh! What a beautiful building!"  
 (ix) The principal said to the students, "Your examination will begin on Monday."  
 (x) The old man said, "Alas! I am lust!"  
 (xi) She said to me, "Never tell lies."  
 (xii) He said to Sheela, "When did you see the Taj?"  
 Ans. (i) He says that he will go to Agra.  
 (ii) She told me that she was tired.

- (iii) Mother asked Ram what he had studied that day.
- (iv) Chintu requested Mala to forgive him.
- (v) Rohan advised Mohan not to fight in the class.
- (vi) Ram asked Seeta if she was not feeling well.
- (vii) The teacher ordered the class to open their books.
- (viii) She exclaimed with wonder that it was a very beautiful building.
- (ix) The Principal informed the students that their examination would begin on Monday.
- (x) The old man exclaimed with sorrow that he was lost.
- (xi) She advised me never to tell lies.
- (xii) He asked Sheela when she had seen the Taj.

## 6. CLAUSES

Clauses are blocks used to make complex or compound sentences.

A clause includes a **subject** and a **finite verb**.

A complex sentence has atleast two clauses but it may have more than two clauses also.

Thus it has a **main clause** and one or more **subordinate clauses**.

These sub-ordinate clause can be :

(i) noun clauses, (ii) adjectival clauses or, (iii) adverbial clauses.

**Noun clauses** : Noun can be the subject/object/object of preposition/or a complement.

The two clauses may be connected by :

(i) that, (ii) if/wether, (iii) a question word.

**Adjectival clauses** : Adjectival clauses (relative clauses) act as adjectives.

The common connectors are :

| Case                 | Person   | Thing      |
|----------------------|----------|------------|
| Nominative (subject) | who/that | which/that |
| objective            | whom     | to which   |
| possessive           | whose    | of which.  |

other connectors can be where/why/when.

**Adverbial clauses** :

Adverbial clauses act as adverbs and can be of different types as given below.

### Types of adverbial clauses and connectors

| S.No. | Name of the Adverbial clause | Connector   |
|-------|------------------------------|---|
| 1.    | of time                      | when, while, before, after, since, till, until, whenever, as soon as, as long as. |
| 2.    | of place                     | where, wherever, wherefrom, whence.   |
| 3.    | of reason (cause)            | because, since, as, for.  |
| 4.    | of condition                 | if, unless, provided that, providing that, on condition that.                     |
| 5.    | of comparison                | as, as .....as, than.   |
| 6.    | of purpose                   | so that, in order that, that, lest (so that not)                                  |
| 7.    | of result                    | so (adj) that, such (adjective + noun) that.                                      |
| 8.    | of concession or contrast    | though, although, even if, not with standing that.                                |



|                           |
|---------------------------|
| <b>PRACTICE EXERCISES</b> |
|---------------------------|

(A) Choose the correct word to complete the sentences :

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| (i) She sings ..... she gets time.                      | (that/whenever) |
| (ii) I know ..... he is honest.                         | (that/who)      |
| (iii) This is the book ..... Ram wrote.                 | (who/which)     |
| (iv) ..... it rains, we will go for a walk.             | (if/unless)     |
| (v) They will get good marks ..... they work hard.      | (if/unless)     |
| (vi) This is Makhan ..... is my cousin.                 | (who/which)     |
| (vii) The book ..... Mohan bought is a dictionary.      | (who/which)     |
| (viii) This is the school ..... we study.               | (when/where)    |
| (ix) No sooner had he seen the cobra ..... he ran away. | (than/then)     |
| (x) If we heat gold it .....                            | (melts/melted). |

(B) Combine the clauses in 'A' with those in 'B' to make complex sentences :

| S. No. | 'A'                        | 'B'                                  |
|--------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1.     | If you go to Agra          | (a) She would buy a new TV.          |
| 2.     | She told me that           | (b) Who were my stuent.              |
| 3.     | I will call you            | (c) Whose father is a maths teacher. |
| 4.     | I saw Mohan and Sohan      | (d) She was honest.                  |
| 5.     | This is the book           | (e) You must visit the Taj.          |
| 6.     | Meet my friend Gopal       | (f) When we reach the station.       |
| 7.     | Although she was poor.     | (g) Which my father wrote.           |
| 8.     | She ran fast so that       | (h) The train had arrived.           |
| 9.     | When I reached the station | (i) She might get the prize.         |
| 10.    | I cannot help you          | (j) Because I am busy.               |

(C) Complete the sentences by adding suitable clauses as instructed :

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (i) I met Rama .....                | (relative clause with 'whose')           |
| (ii) This is the temple .....       | (relative clause with 'where')           |
| (iii) I could not run .....         | (adverbial clause of reason - 'because') |
| (iv) She has two friends .....      | (relative clause with 'who')             |
| (v) I don't know .....              | (noun clause with 'that')                |
| (vi) She wants to find .....        | (noun clause with 'why')                 |
| (vii) Mother asked Mohan .....      | (noun clause with 'when')                |
| (viii) We won't go out .....        | (adverbial clause with 'if')             |
| (ix) She will help me .....         | (adverbial clause with 'unless')         |
| (x) We can't go to the forest ..... | (relative clause with 'which')           |

Ans. (A) (i) whenever, (ii) that, (iii) which, (iv) unless, (v) if, (vi) who, (vii) which, (viii) where, (ix) than, (x) melts.

(B) (i) (e), (ii) (a), (iii) (f), (iv) (b), (v) (g), (vi) (c), (vii) (d), (viii) (i), (ix) (h), (x) (j).

(C) (i) I met Rama whose father is a doctor.

(ii) This is the temple where we go to pray.

(iii) I could not run because I was tired.

(iv) She has two friends who live in the USA.

(v) I don't know that she is a teacher.

(vi) She wants to find why children fail in mathematics.

- (vii) Mother asked Mohan when he would return.  
 (viii) We won't go out if it rains.  
 (ix) She will help me unless she is busy.  
 (x) We can't go to the forest which is far away.  
 (You may complete the sentence with other option too)

## 7. DETERMINERS

**Definition :** A determiner is a word used before a noun or noun phrase to show who or what it refers to e.g., a, an, the, all, some, any, many, much, few, a few, etc. are all determiners :  
 They may be classified as under :

| S. No. | Class type          | Example  |
|--------|---------------------|--|
| 1.     | Pre determiners     | all, all of, half of, twice, quite.  |
| 2.     | Articles            | a, an, the.  |
| 3.     | Ordinals            | first, second, last, 15 <sup>th</sup> etc.                                 |
| 4.     | Cardinals (numbers) | one, two, ten, one thousand, etc.  |
| 5.     | Quantifiers         | some, any, many, much, a lot of, a few, few, little, all, both, none, etc. |
| 6.     | Possessives         | my, your, his, our, her, their, its.                                       |
| 7.     | Distributives       | each, every, either, neither.  |
| 8.     | Demonstrati         | this, that, these, those.  |
| 9.     | Interrogative       | which, what, whose.  |

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

**(A) Fill in the blanks with a/an/the/some/any :**

- (i) I saw ..... boys on ..... road.  
 (ii) She is ..... honest girl.  
 (iii) Are there ..... book of French in the library?  
 (iv) She gave me ..... useful hints.  
 (v) I haven't got ..... good friends.

**(B) Fill in the blanks with many/much/few/little/ a little/a few :**

- (i) I have read ..... books.  
 (ii) We can't spend ..... money.  
 (iii) She is poor and has ..... money.  
 (iv) Ramu is a lonely boy. He has ..... friends.  
 (v) They collected ..... money and donated it for flood victims.  
 (vi) I have ..... good books and I read them daily.

**(C) Fill in the blanks with appropriate deter-miners :**

- (i) My father is ..... dentist.  
 (ii) He is ..... doctor who treats heart patients.  
 (iii) She is ..... orthodontist.  
 (iv) Mr. Makan is ..... best teacher of English.  
 (v) Mother, give me ..... money to buy notebooks.  
 (vi) She couldn't help us. She had ..... money.  
 (vii) ..... people in my village know French or German.  
 (viii) There is ..... water in the river. It is almost dry.  
 (ix) She gave ..... her books to Neetu.  
 (x) I know ..... famous musicians.



Ans. (A) (i) some, the, (ii) an, (iii) any, (iv) some, (v) any.

(B) (i) many, (ii) much, (iii) little, (iv) few, (v) a little, (vi) a few.

(C) (i) a, (ii) the, (iii) an, (iv) the, (v) some, (vi) little, (vii) few, (viii) little, (ix) all, (x) a few.

## 8. PREPOSITIONS

A preposition is a word placed before a noun/pronoun/gerund (ing form of verb used as a noun) and shows the relation with another word in the sentences.

They tell us about time, place, position, direction etc.

Following is the list of prepositions and their class.

| S.No. | Class of preposition | Examples  |
|-------|----------------------|---|
| 1.    | of time              | at, in, on, from, till, until, during, by, before, after for and since          |
| 2.    | of place             | at, in, on  |
| 3.    | of position          | under, underneath, below, beneath, over, above, under                           |
| 4.    | of travel/movement   | along, across, into, through, up, down, between, among, by, beside, on, in, by. |

You will note that some prepositions occur in more than one group. It means that they can be used in more than one ways.

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

(A) Fill in the blanks with correct prepositions :

- (i) She works ..... a school.
- (ii) Sheena always sits ..... Reena.
- (iii) She cut the vegetables ..... a knife.
- (iv) We haven't met ..... 2018.
- (v) She has been working ..... three years.
- (vi) We went ..... Agra ..... Mathura by car.
- (vii) His birthday falls ..... 15<sup>th</sup> August.
- (viii) Sonika jumped ..... the river to save the child.
- (ix) Mother looks ..... the children.
- (x) The car dashed ..... a tree.

(B) Fill in the blanks using the prepositions given below. You may use a prepositions more than once :

- in, into, at, for, since, besides, beside, of, by, till, until, off, with, to, between, among.
- (i) The office opens ..... 9:30 ..... the morning.
  - (ii) Shahin studies ..... a girl's school.
  - (iii) The child fell ..... the river.
  - (iv) It has been raining ..... yesterday.
  - (v) She was proud ..... her success.
  - (vi) The old lady fell ..... the roof.
  - (vii) We travel ..... car everyday.
  - (viii) The shops will be closed ..... now.
  - (ix) She sat ..... her brother and watched TV.
  - (x) Sonu had been playing ..... three hours.
  - (xi) I don't agree ..... you.
  - (xii) I will wait here ..... 10:30.

- (xiii) She has a flat ..... a row house.  
 (xiv) She agreed ..... my proposal.  
 (xv) The thieves divided the money ..... themselves.

Ans. (A) (i) in, (ii) beside, (iii) with, (iv) since, (v) for, (vi) from/to, (vii) on, (viii) into, (ix) after, (x) against.

(B) (i) at, in, (ii) in, (iii) into, (iv) since, (v) of, (vi) off, (vii) by, (viii) by, (ix) beside, (x) for, (xi) with, (xii) till, (xiii) besides, (xiv) to, (xv) among.

### SOME MORE EXERCISES

(A) Fill in the blanks choosing the correct alternatives given :

1. He knows the boy ..... is wearing a blue shirt. (Which/who/where)
2. His brother is ..... R.J. in a local radio channel. (a/an/the)
3. There is not ..... water in the pool. (some/any/many)
4. He has ..... many plays. (write/wrote/written)
5. .... I take your pen ? (need/may/used)
6. We ..... to follow the traffic rules. (ought/should/must)
7. When I was young, I ..... climb trees. (can/could)
8. I haven't bought ..... milk today. (some/any)
9. How..... students are present today ? (many/much)
10. How..... sugar do you take in tea ? (much/many)
11. The Earth..... round the Sun. (moves/move)
12. He always ..... on time. (comes/come)
13. .... Ganga is a sacred river. (a/an/the)
14. Arun is ..... tallest boy in the class. (a/an/the)
15. His father is ..... University professor. (a/an/the)
16. They have been playing here ..... morning. (since/for)
17. We have been studying in this college ..... three years. (since/for)
18. They will go to Delhi ..... Monday. (in/on/at)
19. We went to Kashmir ..... April. (in/on/at)
20. His uncle died ..... cancer. (from/of/to)
21. He is afraid ..... dogs. (from/of/to)
22. I am not going to office ..... I am ill. (and/so/because)
23. .... you work hard, you will pass. (if/unless)
24. I prefer coffee ..... tea. (to/than/from)
25. The patient had died ..... the doctor arrived. (before/after)
26. Bhopal is larger ..... Gwalior. (from/to/than)
27. We were making kites when father ..... (arrive/arrived)
28. Don't leave this place ..... I come back. (until/when)
29. I ..... buy that mobile if I had money. (would/would have)
30. She ..... go to temple every day. When she lived in village. (will/could/could)
31. He wanted to ..... an engineer. (become/becomes/becoming)
32. My father is a ..... teacher. (retire/retiring/retired)
33. He avoids ..... to strangers. (talk/talked/talking)
34. .... goods will not be taken back. (sell/selling/sold)
35. I heard some kids ..... for help. (shout/shouted)
36. Work hard ..... you will fail. (but/and/or)



37. He is ..... hour late. (a/an/the)  
 38. Please spread ..... butter on bread. (a few/a little/few)  
 39. He has given ..... smoking. (away/up/for)  
 40. We ..... wear mask in crowded places. (should/used/ought)  
 41. We ..... to serve our nation. (M.P. 2022) (should/may/ought)  
 42. .... I come in the classroom, Sir ? (M.P. 2022) (can/may/need)  
 43. They ..... football in the evening. (M.P. 2022) (plays/play/playing)  
 44. I have been here..... Monday. (M.P. 2022) (for/since/too)  
 45. I am not afraid ..... death. (M.P. 2022) (on/of/off)  
 46. Look ..... you leap. (M.P. 2022) (before/after/with)  
 47. He has ..... one rupee note. (M.P. 2022) (a/an/the)  
 48. We ..... follow the traffic rules. (M.P. 2023) (must, should, might)  
 49. He died ..... cancer. (M.P. 2023) (of, off, on)  
 50. Rita has ..... friends. (M.P. 2023) (much, many, any)  
 51. She ..... a song. (M.P. 2023) (Singing, sing, sung)  
 52. .... you live long. (M.P. 2023) (can, might, may)  
 53. July comes ..... August. (M.P. 2023) (Before, after, with)  
 54. Ashoka was one of ..... greatest king of India. (M.P.2023) (a, an, the)

**Ans.** 1. who, 2. an, 3. any, 4. written, 5. may, 6. ought, 7. could, 8. any, 9. many, 10. much, 11. moves, 12. comes, 13. the, 14. the, 15. a, 16. since, 17. for, 18. on, 19. in, 20. of, 21. of, 22. because, 23. if, 24. to, 25. before, 26. than, 27. arrived, 28. until, 29. would have, 30. would, 31. become, 32. retired, 33. talking, 34. sold, 35. shout, 36. or, 37. an, 38. a little, 39. up, 40. should, 41. ought, 42. may, 43. play, 44. since, 45. of, 46. before, 47. a, 48. should, 49. of, 50. many, 51. Sings, 52. may, 53. before, 54. the.

**(B) Do as directed :**

1. He did his work well. (Change into negative)  
 2. They are selling their house. (Change into present perfect)  
 3. She speaks the truth. (Change into negative)  
 4. They have been playing here since morning. (Change the sentence into past perfect continuous)  
 5. He teaches Hindi. (Change the sentence into Passive voice)  
 6. Children are making toys. (Change the sentence into Passive Voice)  
 7. In the park/were playing/children/football. (Rearrange the words to make a meaningful sentence)  
 8. She shut the door. (Change into negative)  
 9. He has taken tea. (Change into interrogative)  
 10. She lived in Shivpuri. (Change into interrogative)  
 11. Anita read the Ramayana everyday. (Change into negative)  
 12. He taught English. (Change the sentence into Present Indefinite Tense)  
 13. He is too weak to go school. (Rewrite the sentence using 'so.....that')  
 14. He is too poor to pay his fees. (Rewrite the sentence using 'so.....that')  
 15. The boy is my friend. The boy who has won the prize. (Combine the sentence using 'who')  
 16. The tea is too hot to drink. (Rewrite the sentence using 'so ..... that')  
 17. He is rich. He is not happy. (Combine the sentence using 'yet')  
 18. India played well. India could not win the match. (Combine the sentence using 'though')  
 19. Unless you work hard, you won't pass. (Use 'if' in place of 'unless')

20. Work hard. You will fail in the exam. (Combine the sentence using 'or')
21. He did not go to school. He was ill. (Combine the sentence using 'because')
22. If you don't come to school regularly, you won't learn your lesson.  
(Use 'Unless' in place of 'if')
23. As it was Saturday, there were no children in the school.  
(Use 'because' and rewrite)
24. We shall go for picnic this year. (Rewrite the sentence in 'future continuous')
25. Birds migrate in winter. (Rewrite the sentence in 'past continuous')
26. Jim will take coffee. (Change into 'present perfect')
27. The boy is my cousin. The boy has won the race.  
(Combine the sentences into relative clause)
28. Unless you work hard, you will fail. (Rewrite the sentence using 'if' in place of 'unless')
29. Aman is very intelligent. He can pass this exam easily.  
(Combine the sentence using 'so..... that')
30. He is too ill to go school. (Rewrite the sentence using 'so.....that')
31. The tall man is a doctor. The tall man is talking to my father.  
(Combine the sentence using 'who')
32. I am ill. I am not going to school. (Combine the sentences using 'so')
33. Delhi is larger than Bhopal. (Rewrite the sentence using 'positive degree')
34. Unless it rains, we shall go to school.  
(Rewrite the sentence using 'if' in place of 'unless')
35. If she does not come on time, the teacher will punish her.  
(Rewrite the sentence using 'unless' in place of 'if')
36. They played well. They could not win the match.  
(Combine the sentences using 'though')
37. Hindi is not so difficult as English. (Rewrite the sentence using 'comparative degree')
- 38 They did their work. (M.P. 2022) (Make negative)
39. My mother is cooking food. (M.P. 2022) (Make interrogative)
40. Swimming is a good exercise. (Rewrite the sentence beginning with "It")  
(M.P. 2022)
41. Preeti said, "Ishita is working." (M.P. 2022)(Change the narration)
42. The box is very heavy. He can not lift it. (M.P. 2022) (Use 'so.....that' and rewrite)
43. If he takes a taxi, he will reach the station on time. (Use 'unless' in place of 'if')  
(M.P. 2022)
44. She was drawing a picture. (M.P. 2022) (Change the voice)
45. (a) The boy is my nephew.  
(b) The boy is wearing a blue shirt.  
(M.P. 2023) (Rewrite the pair of sentences using what)
46. Unless you run fast, you will miss the train. (M.P. 2023)(Use 'if' in place of 'unless')
47. Police arrested the thief. (M.P. 2023) (Make negative)
48. Ram writes a letter. (M.P. 2023) (Change the voice)
49. Swimming is a good habit. (M.P. 2023) (Rewrite the sentence beginning with 'it')
50. Mamta goes to school everyday. (M.P. 2023) (Make interrogative)
51. He is so fat that he can not run fast. (M.P. 2023) (Rewrite using 'too-to')

- Ans.** 1. He did not do his work well.  
2. They have sold their house.  
3. She does not speak the truth.  
4. They had been playing here since morning.



5. Hindi is taught by him.
6. Toys are being made by children.
7. Children were playing football in the park.
8. She did not shut the door.
9. Has he taken tea ?
10. Did she live in Shivpuri ?
11. Anita did not read the Ramayan everyday.
12. He teaches English.
13. He is so weak that he can not go to school.
14. He is so poor that he can not pay his fees.
15. The boy who has won the prize is my friend.
16. The tea is so hot that one can not drink it.
17. He is rich yet he is not happy.
18. Though India played well, she could not win the match.
19. If you do not work hard, you won't pass.
20. Work hard or you will fail in the exam.
21. He did not go to school because he was ill.
22. Unless you come to school regularly, you won't learn your lesson.
23. There was no children in the school, because it was Saturday.
24. We shall be going for picnic this year.
25. Birds were migrating in winter.
26. Jim has taken coffee.
27. The boy who has won the race is my cousin.
28. If you do not work hard, you will fail.
29. Aman is so intelligent that he can pass this exam easily.
30. He is so ill that he can not go to school.
31. The tall man who is talking to my father is a doctor.
32. I am ill so I am not going to school.
33. Bhopal is not as large as Delhi.
34. If it does not rain, we shall go to school.
35. Unless she comes on time, the teacher will punish her.
36. Though they played well, they could not win the match.
37. English is more difficult than Hindi.
38. They did not do their work.
39. Is my mother cooking food ?
40. It is a good exercise to swim.
41. Preeti said that Ishita was working.
42. The box is so heavy that he can not lift it.
43. Unless he takes a taxi, he will not reach the station.
44. A picture was being drawn by her.
45. The boy who is wearing a blue shirt is my nephew.
46. If you do not run fast, you will miss the train.
47. Police did not arrest the thief.
48. A letter is written by Ram.
49. It is a good habit to swim.
50. Does Mamta go to school everyday ?
51. He is too fat to run fast.

**[A] PROSE SECTION****1. A LETTER TO GOD**

— G.L. Fuentes

**Extracts for Comprehension**

(1) *The house — the only one in the entire valley—Sat on the crest of a low hill. From this height one could see the river and the field of ripe corn dotted with the flowers that always promised a good harvest. The only thing that the earth needed was a downpour or atleast a shower. Throughout the morning Lencho - who knew his fields intimately, had done nothing else but see the sky towards the north-east.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. (1) Where was the house situated ?**

**Ans.** The house was situated on the crest of a low hill.

**Q. (2) What was the field of corn dotted with ?**

**Ans.** The field of corn was dotted with flowers.

**Q. (3) What did Lencho do throughout the morning ?**

**Ans.** Lencho did nothing but see the sky towards the north-east.

(2) *Not a leaf remained on the trees. The corn was totally destroyed. The flowers were gone from the plants. Lencho's soul was filled with sadness. When the storm had passed, he stopped in the middle of the field and said to his sons, "A plague of locusts would have left more than this. The hail has left nothing. This year we will have no corn."*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. (1) Why did not a leaf remain on the trees ?**

**Ans.** Not a leaf remained on the trees because of the hailstones.

**Q. (2) What does 'a plague of locusts' mean ?**

**Ans.** It means an attack of locusts that completely destroy the crops.

**Q. (3) Why will they have no corn that year ?**

**Ans.** They will have no corn that year because the storm has destroyed the corn-crop.

(3) *'God', he wrote, "if you don't help me, my family and I will go hungry this year. I need a hundred pesos in order to saw my field again and to live till the crop comes, because the hailstorm. ...."*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. (1) Who wrote to God ?**

**Ans.** Lencho, the farmer wrote to God.

**Q. (2) What did he need ?**

**Ans.** He needed a hundred pesos.

(4) *It was impossible for him to gather the hundred pesos, so he was able to send the farmer a little more than half. He put the money in an envelope addressed to Lencho and with it a letter containing only a single word as a signature : "God".*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. (1) Who is 'he' in these lines ?**

**Ans.** 'He' is the postmaster.

**Q. (2) What did he do ?**

**Ans.** He put the money in an envelope addressed to Lencho and signed it with a signature : God.



(5) *The moment the letter fell into the mailbox, the postmaster went to open it. It said, "God : of the money that I asked only seventy pesos reached me. Send me the rest. Since I need it very much. But don't send it to me through mail because the post office employees are a bunch of crooks."*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. (1) Why did the postmaster open the letter ?**

**Ans.** The postmaster opened the letter to see what Lencho had written.

**Q. (2) Why does the writer tell God not to send the money through mail ?**

**Ans.** The writer, (Lencho) told the God not to send the money through mail because, he said the post office employees were a bunch of crooks.

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What did Lencho hope for ?**

**Ans.** Lencho hoped for a good harvest. The crop only needed some rain.

**Q. 2. Why did Lencho say that the raindrops were like 'new coins' ?**

**Ans.** Lencho said that the raindrops were like 'new coins' because the rain would help his crop and he expected a rich harvest.

**Q. 3. How did the rain change ? What happened to Lencho's fields ?**

**Ans.** Suddenly, large hailstones began to fall with the rain and continued for an hour. The corn was totally destroyed.

**Q. 4. What were Lencho's feelings when the hail stopped ?**

**Ans.** Lencho was filled with sadness. All his labour had been wasted. He said that year they would have no corn.

**Q. 5. Who or what did Lencho have faith in ? What did he do ?**

**Ans.** Lencho had faith in God and he wrote a letter addressed to God asking for a hundred pesos to buy food and for seeds.

**Q. 6. Who read the letter ?**

**Ans.** The postmaster read the letter.

**Q. 7. What did the postmaster do then ?**

**Ans.** He was touched by Lencho's faith in God. So he collected seventy pesos and sent it to Lencho with a letter signed : God.

**Q. 8. Was Lencho surprised to find a letter for him with money in it ?**

**Ans.** Lencho was not surprised to find the letter and the money. He felt that God himself had sent him the money.

**Q. 9. What made him angry ?**

**Ans.** He was angry because he had demanded a hundred pesos and he got only seventy pesos.

**Q. 10. Why does the postmaster send money to Lencho ? Why does he sign the letter 'God' ?**

**Ans.** The postmaster does not want to break Lencho's faith in God. He feels good about this. He signs the letter : God to reaffirm his faith in God. If he didn't do so, Lencho might think differently.

**Q. 11. Did Lencho try to find out who had sent the money to him ? Why/why not ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** Lencho did not try to find out who had sent him the money. He believed, naturally that God had sent him the money.

**Q. 12. Who does Lencho think has taken the rest of the money ? What is the irony in the situation ?**

**Ans.** Lencho thinks that the post office employees have taken the rest of the money. The irony of the situation is that the kind effort of the postmaster which deserves gratitude is nullified by Lencho's thinking.

**Q. 13. Who was Lencho ? What were his problems ?**

**Ans.** Lencho was a poor, hard working farmer. His crop of corn was almost ready but it needed a little rain. If it did not rain, he would not get a good crop and he and his family might suffer starvations for the year.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Explain the irony of Lencho calling the postal employees 'a bunch of crooks'.**

**Ans.** Lencho's crop was completely destroyed by the hailstorm. He wrote a letter to God requesting him to send him a hundred pesos. The postmaster and his staff were moved by the simple faith of this farmer and decided to help him. So, together they collected seventy pesos and sent him the money by mail. The postmaster signed the letter as GOD to keep Lencho's faith intact. It was an act of kindness. When Lencho got the letter and counted the money, he found it was only seventy pesos and not one hundred. He felt that the rest of the money was taken by the postal people because God could not make a mistake. So, he wrote another letter to God, asking him to send the remaining thirty pesos. He added that God should not send the money through post because the postal people were 'a bunch of crooks'. The irony is that, instead of being thankful Lencho blames the kind postal people.

MP Board Education Youtube Channel

## 2. NELSON MANDELA : LONG WALK TO FREEDOM

— Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *The ceremony took place in the lovely sandstone amphitheatre formed by the Union buildings in Pretoria. For decades this had been the seat of white supremacy, and now it was the site of a rainbow gathering of different colours and nations for the installation of South Africa's first democratic, non-racial government.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Where did the ceremony take place ?**

**Ans.** The ceremony took place in the lovely sandstone amphitheatre.

**Q. 2. What was special about the ceremony ?**

**Ans.** The ceremony was special and representatives from many countries of the world had gathered there because it was for the installation of the first, democratic, anti-racial government of South Africa.

(2) *We, who were outlaws not so long ago, have today been given the rare privilege to be host to the nations of the world on our own soil. We thank all of our distinguished guests for having come to take possession with the people of our country of what is after all victory for justice, for peace, for human dignity.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who spoke these words and when ?**

**Ans.** Nelson Mandela spoke these words at the swearing in ceremony as the first President of South Africa.

**Q. 2. What does the event signify ? Why is it an important event ?**

**Ans.** The event signifies the victory of justice, peace and human dignity. It is an important event because it brought an end to the Apartheid rule.

(3) *A few moments later, we all lifted our eyes in awe as a spectacular array of South African jets, helicopters and troop carriers roared in perfect formation over the Union buildings. It was not only a display of pinpoint precision and military force but a demonstration of military's loyalty to democracy, to a new government that had been freely and fairly elected.*



### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What spectacular scene did they see ?**

**Ans.** They saw an array of South African jets, helicopters and troop carriers roaring in perfect formation over the union buildings.

**Q. 2. What did the show demonstrate ?**

**Ans.** The show demonstrated military's loyalty to the first newly formed non-racial, democratic government of South Africa.

*(4) On the day of inauguration I was overwhelmed with the sense of history. In the first decade of the twentieth century a few years after the bitter Anglo-Boer war and before my own birth, the white skinned people of South Africa patched up their differences and erected a system of racial domination against the dark-skinned peoples of their own land. The structure they created formed the basis of one of the harshest, most inhumane societies the world has ever known.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the white people of South Africa do after the Anglo-Boer war ?**

**Ans.** The white people patched up their differences and came together.

**Q. 2. What kind of structure did the whites in South Africa erect ?**

**Ans.** The system they created was based on racial discrimination. It was the harshest and most inhumane system which discriminated against the native blacks of the country.

*(5) That day had come about through the unimaginable sacrifices of thousands of my people, people whose sufferings can never be counted or repaid. I felt that day, as I have on so many other days, that I was simply the sum of all those African patriots who had come before me. The long and noble line ended and now began again with me. I was pained that I was not able to thank them and that they were not able to see what their sacrifices had wrought.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why was Nelson Mandela pained ?**

**Ans.** Nelson Mandela was pained that he could not thank all those freedom fighters and also that they could not see what their sacrifices had made possible.

**Q. 2. What did Nelson Mandela feel on that day ?**

**Ans.** He felt that he was the sum of all those African patriots who had made sacrifices before him. The noble line ended on him and a new line started with him.

*(6) But the decades of oppression and brutality had another, unintended effect, and that was that it produced the Oliver Tambo, the Walter Sisulu, the Chief Luthulis, the Yusuf Dadoo, the Bram Fischers, the Robert Sobukwes of our time : men of such extraordinary courage. Wisdom and generosity that their like may never be known again. Perhaps it requires such depths of oppression to create such heights of character.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What unintended effect did the oppression and brutality produce ?**

**Ans.** The policy of oppression and brutality produced freedom fighters like Oliver Tambo, Walter Sisulu, Yusuf Dadoo, Bram Fisher etc.

**Q. 2. What type of people were the freedom fighters ?**

**Ans.** They were men of extraordinary courage, wisdom and generosity.

*(7) At first, as a student, I wanted freedom only for myself, the transitory freedoms of being able to stay out at night, read what I pleased and go where I choose. Later, as a young man in Johannesburg, I yearned for the basic and honourable freedom of achieving my potential, of earning my keep, of marrying and having a family : the freedom not to be obstructed in a lawful life.*



**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What freedoms did he yearn for as a student?**

**Ans.** As a student, he wanted freedom of being able to stay out at night, read what he liked and go where he choose.

**Q. 2. What freedoms did he wish for as a young man in Johannesburg ?**

**Ans.** As a young man, he wished for freedom to achieve his potential, to earn his keep, to marry and have a family and not to be obstructed in a lawful life.

**(8)** *In life, everyman has twin obligations : Obligations to his family, to his parents, to his wife and children; and he has an obligation to his people, his community, his country. In a civil and humane society, each man is able to fulfill those obligations according to his own inclinations and abilities. But in a country like South Africa, it was almost impossible for a man of my birth and colour to fulfil both of these obligations. In South Africa, a man of colour who attempted to live as a human being was punished and isolated.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What are the twin obligations that every man has ?**

**Ans.** Every man has two obligations : One, to his family, his parents, wife and children and the other to his people, his community.

**Q. 2. What happened to a man of colour who tried to live as a human being ?**

**Ans.** If a man of colour in South Africa tried to live as a human being and fulfil his twin obligations he was punished and isolated.

**(9)** *I knew that the oppressor must be liberated just as surely as the oppressed. A man who takes away another man's freedom is a prisoner of hatred; he is locked behind the bars of prejudice and narrow mindedness. I am not truly free if I am taking away someone's freedom, just as surely as I am not free when my freedom is taken from me. The oppressed and the opposer alike are robbed of their humanity.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Who is the writer of the lesson from which this text has been taken :**

(a) G.L. Fuentes, (b) Anup Kumar Datta, (c) Nelson Mandela.

**Q. 2. A man who takes away another man's freedom is :**

(a) a prisoner of superiority, (b) a prisoner of self-value, (c) a prisoner of hatred.

**Q. 3. Find out the word from the above text which is opposite of the word 'wide' :**

(a) liberated, (b) narrow, (c) robbed.

**Ans.** 1. (c), 2. (c), 3. (b).

**Q. 4. Where is the oppressor locked ?**

**Ans.** An oppressor is locked behind the bars of prejudice and narrow mindedness. He is a prisoner of hatred.

**Q. 5. What similarity does Mandela find between the oppressor and the oppressed ?**

**Ans.** According to Nelson Mandela, the oppressed loses his physical freedom but the oppressor is in the prison of prejudice and ill-will. They both need to be released from their prisons.

**(10)** *Tenth May dawned bright and clear. For the past few days, I had been pleasantly besieged by dignitaries and world leaders who were coming to pay their respects before the inauguration. The inauguration would be the largest gathering ever of international leaders of South African soil. The ceremonies took place in the lovely sandstone Amphitheatre formed by the Union Buildings in Pretoria. For decades this had been the seat of white supremacy, and now it was the site of a rainbow gathering of different colours and nations for the installation of South-Africa's first democratic, non-racial government.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. From which lesson has this text been taken :**

(a) A letter to God, (b) His first flight, (c) Nelson Mandela, Long walk to Freedom.



**Q. 2. In the above text, 'I', refers to :**

(a) G.L. Fuentes, (b) Anup Kumar Datta, (c) Nelson Mandela.

**Q. 3. The ceremony took place in :**

(a) Pretoria, (b) Johannesburg, (c) Durban.

Ans. 1. (c), 2. (c), 3. (a).

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Where did the ceremonies take place ? Can you name any public buildings in India that are made of sandstone ?** (M.P. 2022)

Ans. The inaugural ceremonies took place in the lovely sandstone amphitheatre formed by the Union Buildings in Pretoria. The Red Fort in Delhi and Hawa Mahal in Jaipur, are some of the public buildings in India which are made of sandstone.

**Q. 2. Can you say how 10 May is an 'autumn day' in South Africa ?**

Ans. 10 May is 'an autumn day' in South Africa because from March to May it is autumn season in South Africa. It is very much like we have Christmas in winter while the people of U.S.A. celebrate it in summer.

**Q. 3. At the beginning of his speech, Mandela mentions "an extraordinary human disaster". What does he mean by this ? What is the "Glorious human achievement" he speaks of at the end ?**

Ans. Mandela, in his speech refers to the domination of the dark skinned people the white people as an extraordinary human disaster. This continued for about eighty years. He calls the installation of the non-racial, democratic government in South Africa as a glorious human achievement.

**Q. 4. What does Mandela thank the international leaders for ?**

Ans. Mandela thanks the international leaders to be present on the occasion to witness victory for justice, for peace and for human dignity. Their presence shows that it was an important event in the history of South Africa.

**Q. 5. What ideals does he set out for the future of South Africa ?**

Ans. Nelson Mandela sets out the ideas of liberating his people from the chains of poverty, deprivation and suffering gender and other discriminations. He would work for an oppression free society.

**Q. 6. What do the military generals do ? How has their attitude changed and why ?**

Ans. The military generals salute Nelson Mandela, the president of South Africa. Their attitude has changed because South Africa is now a democratic, non-racial government. In the olden days, when he was fighting the racist government, they might have arrested him.

**Q. 7. Why were the two national anthems sung ?** (M.P. 2023)

Ans. The Republic of South Africa had two major constituents : The blacks and the whites. It was appropriate and showed that the two communities were to live together peacefully, forgetting the past.

**Q. 8. How does Mandela describe the system of government in his country (i) in the first decade and (ii) in the last decade of the 20th century ?**

Ans. In the first decade, after the Anglo-Boer war the system of apartheid was put in action. The system was based on racial discrimination and the coloured people faced oppression. In Nelson Mandela's democratic government all enjoyed peace, justice, equality and human dignity irrespective of their colour.

**Q. 9. What does courage mean to Mandela ?**

Ans. According to Mandela courage is not just absence of fear, it is victory over fear. The really courageous freedom fighters had that true courage.

**Q. 10. What does he think is natural, to love or to hate ?**

Ans. Mandela thinks love is the more natural instinct than hatred, so, it should be easy for us to give up hatred and animosity.



**Q. 11. What twin obligations does Mandela mention ?**

**Ans.** The twin obligations that Mandela mentions are a man's obligations to his family and his obligations to his people, his community.

**Q. 12. What did being free mean to Mandela as a boy, and as a student ? How does he contrast these, 'transitory freedoms' with the basic and honourable freedom ?**

**Ans.** As a boy, being free did not mean much to Mandela, as a student he wanted freedom to stay out at night, read what he pleased and go wherever he wanted. These were transitory freedoms. The basic and honourable freedoms, in contrast are related to the freedom of his people to live their lives with dignity and self-respect.

**Q. 13. Does Mandela think the oppressor is free? Why/why not ?**

**Ans.** Mandela thinks that the oppressor is also not free because he is behind bars of prejudice and narrow mindedness. He is a prisoner of hatred. He also needs to be freed.

**Q. 14. Why did such a large number of international leaders attend the inauguration ? What did it signify the victory of ?**

**Ans.** A large number of international leaders attended the inauguration to pay their respect to freedom of South Africa. The event signified the triumph of people's discrimination and oppression. The event recognized human equality, freedom and dignity of life.

**Q. 15. What does Mandela mean when he says, he is simply the sum of all those African patriot's who had gone before him ?**

**Ans.** When he says that he is simply the sum of all those African patriots who had gone before him, he shows his respect for the ideas and dreams for which these brave people laid down their lives. Their example supported him in his journey to freedom and he represents the views of all those noble heroes.

**Q. 16. Would you agree that 'the depth of oppression' creates height of character ? How does Mandela illustrate this ? Can you add your own examples to the argument ?**

**Ans.** I agree that when oppression crosses its limits, it creates the strength in the oppressed to retaliate. The oppression of the black people produced heroes. We can see it in the examples of our own struggle for freedom. It produced not only Bhagat Singh or Rajguru but many ordinary people also sacrifice their lives.

**Q. 17. How did Mandela's understanding of freedom change with age and experience ?**

**Ans.** In the childhood, freedom meant being able to move about freely and obey his father. Later he realised that the freedom was illusory-not real. First, as a student he wanted freedom for himself. Soon, it was freedom for the whole community. This forced him to change from a law-abiding attorney to a criminal.

**Q. 18. How did Mandela's 'hunger for freedom' change his life ? (M.P. 2022)**

**Ans.** When he saw the oppression of the black under the apartheid rule, his life was changed. Hunger of his people for dignity and respect brought the change. The frightened young man became a bold man who built his life around the struggle to get fundamental rights for his people. This made him selfless and ready to sacrifice.

**Q. 19. Why was 10th of May 1994 a red letter day in the history of South Africa ?**

**Ans.** The date is a red letter day in the history of South Africa because on this day a non-racist democratic government came into power bringing an end to the 80 year long apartheid rule.

**Q. 20. After achieving political emancipation what does Mandela want to do in S. Africa ?**

**Ans.** After political emancipation Mandela wants to liberate his people from the chains of poverty, suffering and discrimination. He wants the oppressed people of South Africa to get a life of dignity and freedom.



**Q. 21. What did Nelson Mandela think about the oppressor ? (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.** Mandela always thought that both oppressor and oppressed are deprived of their humanity. The oppressor is a prisoner of anger and hatred and is behind the bars of prejudice and narrow mindedness.

**Q. 22. What did the display of jets and military salute symbolise ?**

**Ans.** The display by the aircraft and the salute by the military symbolized the military's loyalty to democracy, to the new government which was freely and fairly elected.

**Q. 23. What do you understand by apartheid ? How did it affect the people of South Africa ?**

**Ans.** The apartheid rule was based on racial discrimination and exploitation of the black people. They did not enjoy any fundamental rights and freedom. Oppression, torture and exploitation of the blacks was the common feature of this rule.

**Q. 24. What promise does Mandela make in the beginning of his speech ?**

**Ans.** In the beginning of his speech Mandela promises to liberate his people from the chains of poverty, deprivation and discrimination of all types.

**Q. 25. What did Mandela realize about his brothers and sisters ?**

**Ans.** Mandela realised that his brothers and sisters were not free. They were oppressed, discriminated against and deprived of the human dignity.

**Q. 26. What does Mandela refer to as 'extraordinary human disaster' ? What did it produce ?**

**Ans.** Mandela refers to the apartheid rule in S. Africa as 'extraordinary human disaster'. In this rule, the black people faced inhumane oppression. This oppression, however, produced men of great courage and determination who fought the oppressive rule.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What do you think about the obligations which the writer is talking about ? Also, describe his feelings about them.**

**Ans.** The writer talks about two obligations. The first is towards his family, parents, wife and children. The second obligation is towards his community. One has to fulfil these twin obligations in the society. But being a black in South Africa, one could not fulfil these obligations. Mandela came to realize that he could not fulfil his obligations. He chose to fulfill his obligations to his society and in the process gave up his obligations to his family. He fought for his community's rights and freedoms and succeeded in ending the apartheid rule of discrimination.

**Q. 2. Describe the value of freedom ? How is it important for the growth of civilization and humanism ?**

**Ans.** The value of freedom is best known to a person who does not have freedom. A person bound within limits and not allowed to perform his duties knows its true value. A bird or an animal in a cage craves for freedom. Nelson Mandela spent years in prison to get freedom for his people. Even in India, people sacrificed for freedom. Freedom is essential for the growth of civilization and humanism. An oppressed person cannot progress. So, for civilization and humanism to prosper, freedom is essential.

**Q. 3. Why was Mandela overwhelmed with a sense of history ? How did he succeed in ending the apartheid regime in South Africa ?**

**Ans.** On the day of inauguration Mandela was overwhelmed with a sense of history. He remembered the days of apartheid rule when the police officers would arrest him. Now, they were saluting him. He also remembered how the apartheid rule forced the black people suffer inhumane treatment. He joined the African National Congress to work for his people's freedom. He became a bold criminal and had to spend 30 years in prison. He had to give up his obligations to his family. Mandela remembered other courageous freedom fighters who sacrificed their lives for the noble cause. The history of the whole struggle went round his mind at the grand moment of installation of a democratic, non-racist government in South Africa.

### 3. TWO STORIES ABOUT FLYING

#### I. HIS FIRST FLIGHT

— Liam o'Flaherty

#### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *The great expanse of sea stretched down beneath, and it was such a way down-miles down. He felt certain that his wings would never support him. So he bent his head and ran away back to the little hole under the ridge where he had slept the last night. Even when each of his brothers and his little sister, whose wings were far shorter than his own, ran to the brink, flapped their wings and flew away, he failed to muster up courage to take that plunge which appeared to him so desperate.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did he feel certain of.?**

**Ans.** The young seagull felt certain that his wings would never support him to fly.

**Q. 2. Where did he run back to ?**

**Ans.** He ran back to the little hole under the ridge where he had slept the last night.

**Q. 3. Whose wings were the longest ?**

**Ans.** The young seagull's wings were the longest.

**Q. 4. What seemed so desperate to him ? Why ?**

**Ans.** It seemed desperate to him to take the plunge towards the sea because he failed to muster up courage.

(2) *All day long, he had watched his parents flying about with his brother and sister, perfecting them in the art of flight, teaching them how to skim the waves and dive for fish. He had, infact, seen his older brother catch his first horning and devour it, standing on a rock, while his parents circle around raising a proud cackle. And all the morning the whole family had walked about on the big plateau midway down the opposite cliff taunting him with his cowardice.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the seagull watch all day long ?**

**Ans.** All day long, the seagull watched his parents teaching his siblings the art of flight, of skimming the waves and diving.

**Q. 2. Why did the family raise a proud cackle ?**

**Ans.** The family raised a loud cackle when the older brother caught his first hering (a fish).

**Q. 3. What were they taunting him for ?**

**Ans.** They were taunting him for his cowardice.

(3) *He saw his two brothers and sister lying on the plateau, dozing with their heads sunk into their necks. His father was preening the feathers on his white back only his mother was looking at him.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. How did the seagull feel looking at his family ?**

**Ans.** The seagull felt lonely and unhappy looking at his family.

**Q. 2. What were his brothers and sister doing ?**

**Ans.** The brothers and sister were lying on the plateau, dozing. They had their heads sunk into their necks.

**Q. 3. Who was looking at him ?**

**Ans.** His mother was looking at him.

(4) *With a loud scream he fell outwards and downwards into space. Then a monstrous terror seized him and his heart stood still. He could hear nothing. But it only lasted for*



minute. The next moment he felt his wings spread outwards. The wind rushed against his breast feathers, then under his stomach and against his wings.

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the seagull do when he was mad with hunger ?**

**Ans.** The seagull mad with hunger dived at the fish. He saw that his wings supported him.

**Q. 2. Why did a monstrous terror seize him ?**

**Ans.** A monstrous terror seized him because he felt he could not fly.

**Q. 3. Why did the mother not give food to the seagull ?**

**Ans.** The mother did not give him food because she wanted him to learn to fly on his own.

**(5)** He dropped his legs to stand on the green sea. His legs sank into it. He screamed with fright and attempted to rise again flapping his wings. But he was tired and weak with hunger and he could not rise, exhausted by the strange exercise. His feet sank into the green sea, and then his belly touched it and he sank no further. He was floating on it and around him his family was screaming, praising him and their beaks offered him scrapes of dogfish.

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why did he scream with fright ?**

**Ans.** He screamed with fright because he was afraid that he was going to drown.

**Q. 2. Why could he not rise ?**

**Ans.** He could not rise because he was exhausted.

**Q. 3. What was the strange exercise ?**

**Ans.** The strange exercise was his first flight, from the ledge to the sea.

**Q. 4. What did the family do ?**

**Ans.** The family screamed with joy, praised him and offered him scrapes of dogfish.

**(6)** The young seagull was alone on his ledge. His two brothers and his sister had already flown away the day before. He had been afraid to fly with them. Somehow when he had taken a little run forward to the brink of the ledge and attempted to flap his wings he became afraid. The great expanse of sea stretched down beneath, and it was such a long way down—miles down. He felt certain that his wings would never support him, so he bent his head and ran away back to the little hole under the ledge where he slept at night.

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. The word little means ..... :**

(a) big, (b) Wide, (c) Small.

**Q. 2. What happened when he ran to the brink of the ledge :**

(a) He became afraid, (b) He flew away, (c) He fell into the sea.

**Q. 3. Where did he sleep at night :**

(a) On a tree, (b) under the ledge, (c) In water.

**Ans.** 1. (c), 2. (a), 3. (b).

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. 'The sight of the food maddened him.' What does this suggest ? What compelled the young seagull to finally fly ?** (M.P. 2022, 23)

**Ans.** The seagull was very hungry. He had nothing to eat for a day. The sight of the fish compelled him to make a desperate attempt to fly. At this moment his hunger overpowered his fear. Thus the mother's tactics forced him to learn to fly.

**Q. 2. "They were beckoning him, calling shrilly." Why did the seagull's father and mother cajole him to fly ?**

**Ans.** His parents, brothers and sister taunted him for his cowardice. The parents threatened to leave him alone starving at the edge unless he tried to fly. Thus they encouraged him to fly.



**Q. 3. Have you ever had a similar experience where your parents encouraged you to do something that you were too scared to try ? Discuss this in pairs.**

**Ans.** Yes, that was when I was learning to find H.C.F. by long division. I got the answers wrong again and again. My mother is a teacher. She asked me to start with simpler sums. Gradually, I mastered the technique and actually improved my performance in mathematics.

**Q. 4. In the case of a bird flying, it seems a natural act and a foregone conclusion that it should succeed. In the example you have given in answer to the previous question, was your success guaranteed or was it important for you to try regardless of a possibility of failure ?**

**Ans.** A bird learning to fly seems a natural act but still it has to be learnt and practised with constant efforts. In my case also there were failures and despair. My mother's constant encouragement helped me to achieve the mathematical ability.

**Q. 5. Where did the young seagull sit alone ? What did he watch from there ?**

**Ans.** The young seagull sat alone at the edge of ledge. His two brothers and sister had flown away with the parents. Now he was watching his father teaching his siblings the art of flying, of skimming the waves and diving for the fish. He was sad.

**Q. 6. How were the two brothers and the sister different from the young seagull ?**

**Ans.** The two brothers and the sister had smaller wings, possibly they were younger but they had more courage and confidence than the young seagull. He felt dreadfully afraid to try flying.

**Q. 7. Why did the young seagull cry 'Ga, ga, ga ? Did her mother oblige him ?**

**Ans.** When the young seagull saw his mother flying with a fish in her beak he cried, "Ga, ga, ga". He was requesting his mother to give him food. But the mother came near the ledge and flew away. Desperate with hunger, the young seagull flew. That was his first lesson in flying.

**Q. 8. How did the mother seagull force the young seagull to fly ?**

**Ans.** The mother flew with a fish near the seagull but did not give him food. She flew away. The seagull maddened with hunger forgot his fear and ran to the edge. He found he could fly.

**Q. 9. How did the young seagull and his family celebrate his first flight ?**

**Ans.** The hunger forced the seagull to fly but he was scared at first. Then he found his wings supporting him in the flight. The family were overjoyed. They screamed with joy and praised him. They even offered pieces of dogfish to eat.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a summary of the story 'His First Flight'.**

**Ans.** This is the story of a young seagull who was afraid to make his first flight. He was afraid that his wings would not support him and the sea below seemed a long way down. So, he had run back to the little hole under the ledge. Nobody came to see him. He saw his father teaching his siblings, he saw them learning to fly, to skim the waves and to dive for fish. He pretended to sleep, an attempt to draw the attention but in vain.

Then he saw his mother flying with a fish in beak. He cried, "Ga, ga, ga. (Give me food) but the mother turned away. The sight of the food maddened the seagull. He dived forgetting his fears. He felt his wings spread outwards. He was not falling, he was flying. He had overcome his fear. He could fly. His feet sank into the green sea, he was floating. The family congratulated him, praised him and offered him pieces of dogfish as a reward.



## II. THE BLACK AEROPLANE

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *I was happy to be alone high up above the sleeping countryside. I was flying my old Dakota plane over France back to England. I was dreaming of my holiday and looking forward to being with my family. I looked at my watch : One thirty in the morning.*

(M.P. 2023)

*"I shall call Paris control soon." I thought.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why would the narrator call Paris control ?**

**Ans.** The narrator would call Paris control to inform them about his flight and get directions.

**Q. 2. Where was the narrator going ?**

**Ans.** The narrator was going to England.

**Q. 3. Why was he excited ?**

**Ans.** He was excited to go home and enjoy being with his family.

(2) *"I'll take the risk", I thought and flew that old Dakota straight into the storm. Inside the clouds, everything was suddenly black. It was impossible to see anything outside the aeroplane. The old aeroplane jumped and twisted in the air. I looked at the compass. I could not believe my eyes : the compass was turning round and round and round. It was dead. It could not work. The other instruments were suddenly dead too.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What risk did the narrator (pilot) decide to take ?**

**Ans.** The pilot decided to fly the plane through the dark clouds.

**Q. 2. What could he see outside the plane ?**

**Ans.** It was pitch dark. He could see nothing.

**Q. 3. How did the aeroplane behave in the storm?**

**Ans.** The aeroplane jumped and twisted. The pilot seemed to have no control over it.

(3) *I had no radio, no compass and I could not see where I was. I was lost in the storm. Then, in the black clouds, quite near me, I saw another aeroplane. It had no lights on its wings but I could see it flying next to me through the storm. I could see the pilot's face turned towards me. I was very glad to see another person. He lifted one hand and waved. 'Follow me', he was saying, "follow me".*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What was the pilot's situation ?**

**Ans.** The pilot had no radio and no compass. He could see nothing outside. He was lost in the storm.

**Q. 2. What did he see then ?**

**Ans.** He saw another aeroplane.

**Q. 3. What was the pilot's reaction ?**

**Ans.** He was glad to see another aeroplane flying near him.

**Q. 4. What did the other pilot do ?**

**Ans.** The other pilot lifted one hand and waved. He asked the pilot to follow him.

(4) *After half an hour the strange black aeroplane was still there in front of me in the clouds. Now there was only enough fuel in the old Dakota's last tank to fly for five or ten minutes more. I was starting to feel frightened again. But then, he started to go down and I followed through the storm.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. For how long did the pilot follow the strange black aeroplane ?**

**Ans.** The pilot followed the strange black aeroplane for half an hour.

**Q. 2. Why was the pilot again feeling frightened?**

**Ans.** The pilot was again feeling frightened because he had fuel only for about ten minutes.

**Q. 3. What happened after that ?**

**Ans.** Then the strange black plane began to go down and he followed it.

(5) *I went and asked a woman in the control centre where I was and who the other pilot was. I wanted to say, "Thank you". She looked at me very strangely and laughed, 'Another aeroplane? Up there in the storm? No other aeroplanes were flying tonight. Yours was the only one I could see on the radar.' So who helped me to arrive there safely without a compass or a radio, and without any more fuel in my tanks? Who was the pilot on the strange black aeroplane, flying in the storm, without lights?*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the pilot at the control centres ?**

**Ans.** He asked which place it was and who was the other pilot whom he wanted to thank.

**Q. 2. What did the woman at the control centre say ?**

**Ans.** She said that no planes were flying in the stormy weather and he was the only one she saw on the radar screen.

**Q. 3. Who could the other pilot be ? Choose from the following :**

(a) an alien (b) a ghost, (c) the pilot's imagination.

**Ans.** He could be anyone. There is no hint in the story.

(6) *The moon coming up in the east, behind me, and stars were shining in the clear sky above me. There wasn't cloud in the sky. I was happy to be alone high up above the sleeping countryside. I flying my old Dakota aeroplane over France back to England. I was dreaming of my holiday and looking forward to being with my family. I looked at my watch at one thirty in the morning.*

*'I should call Paris Control soon', I thought. As I looked down past the nose of my aeroplane. I saw the big lights of a big city in front of me.* (M.P. 2023)

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. How was the weather when the pilot started flying aeroplane :**

(a) cloudy, (b) clear, (c) foggy.

**Q. 2. The pilot was returning from :**

(a) England to France, (b) France to England, (c) New York to Paris.

**Q. 3. From which lesson has this text been taken :**

(a) A letter to God, (b) His first flight, (c) Black Aeroplane.

**Q. 4. Pilot was going to ..... :**

(M.P. 2023)

(a) France, (b) India, (c) USA, (d) England.

**Ans.** 1. (b), 2. (b), 3. (c), 4. (d).

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. "I'll take the risk". What is the risk ? Why does the narrator take it ?**

**Ans.** The risk is to fly the Dakota straight through the storm. The narrator takes the risk to reach home and meet his family.

**Q. 2. Describe the narrator's experience as he flew the aeroplane into the storm ?**

**Ans.** As he flew the plane into the storm, he was surrounded by blackness. He could see nothing outside. His vital aids, the compass and the radio were dead. The plane jumped and twisted in the air. The situation was critical. Then he saw a black aeroplane. The pilot waved at him and asked him to follow. The plane disappeared when the pilot was safe.

**Q. 3. Why does the narrator say "I landed and was not sorry to walk away from the old Dakota ?"**

**Ans.** Though he had landed safely. The plane had dreadful memories for the narrator. So, for that time, atleast, he was glad to go away from the plane.

**Q. 4. What made the woman in the control centre look at the narrator strangely ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** The woman in the control centre looked at the narrator strangely when he asked her about the other aeroplane. In the strong weather no planes were flying and she was surprised at his question.



**Q. 5. Who do you think, helped the narrator to reach safely ? Discuss this among yourself and give reasons for your answer :**

**Ans.** We think that it was some supernatural power, otherwise he would surely have crashed. The following things points to this :

- (i) Appearance of the mysterious plane at the right time.
- (ii) The pilot knowing the narrator's problem.
- (iii) Guiding the narrator safely through the storm.
- (iv) No presence of the plane on the radar.

**Q. 6. What happened when the author turned the aeroplane 12° W towards England ?**

**Ans.** So far the sky was clear but when the author turned 12° W towards England about 150 kms from Paris, he saw storm clouds. They were huge, black, mountain like standing across the sky.

**Q. 7. When the author decided to fly through the clouds what difficulty did he face ?**

**Ans.** The author decided to fly through the clouds but he began to face difficulties. It was pitch-dark and he could see nothing outside. The plane jumped and twisted in the air. His compass and radio had stopped working. He was in grave difficulties.

**Q. 8. Why is the black aeroplane called strange ?**

**Ans.** The black aeroplane is called strange because it appeared suddenly. It had no lights on its wings. It was not common to see planes flying in the bad weather. And finally, it guided the Dakota pilot through the storm.

**Q. 9. Who helped the narrator go across storm safely and how ?**

**Ans.** The narrator could not fly in the storm. His compass and radio were dead. Suddenly a black aeroplane appeared. Its pilot waved at him and asked him to follow. The narrator followed the plane. Then the plane went down. The narrator following it landed safely at the runway.

**Q. 10. Describe the flight of the Dakota plane till it landed safely at the airport ? Or, who rescued the pilot of the Dakota and how ?**

**Ans.** The pilot of the Dakota was in difficulties. He could not see through the black clouds and his compass and radio were dead. Then he saw a strange black plane. The pilot waved at him and asked him to follow. The plane guided him to a safe landing. It was the strange black plane that helped him in landing safely.

### **Long Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. Why did the author think that he should go back to Paris ? What did he do ?**

**Ans.** The author was flying from France to England. When he was 150 kilometers ahead of Paris he saw he was caught in a storm. The black clouds were like huge mountains. He could not fly over the clouds and did not have enough fuel to fly around them. So, he thought of turning back to Paris. Then he thought of the breakfast with his family and decided to take the risk to fly straight through the storm.

**Q. 2. The narrator wanted to know where he was and who the other pilot was ? What does it tell us about him ?**

**Ans.** As soon as he landed safely, the pilot looked into the sky to see the other plane. The sky was black. He asked the woman at the control where he was and where was the black aeroplane. The woman looked strangely at him and said that no other planes were flying that night due to the storm. She could see only his plane on the radar. His eagerness to know about the other pilot tells us that he was a nice man and wanted to thank the person who saved his life. We all would do that.

## 4. FROM THE DIARY OF ANNE FRANK

— Anne Frank

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *Writing in a diary is a really strange experience for someone like me. Not only because I've never written anything before but also because it seems to me that latter on neither I nor anyone else would be interested in the musings of a thirteen year old school girl. Oh well, it doesn't matter. I feel like writing and I have an even greater need to get all kinds of things off my chest.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Name the chapter :**

(a) A letter to God, (b) Nelson Mandela : Long walk to freedom, (c) Two stories about flying, (d) From the Diary of Anne Frank.

**Q. 2. Who is the author of From the Diary of Anne Frank :**

(a) Ruskin Bond, (b) Anne Frank, (c) Liam O' Flaherty, (d) G. L. Fuentes

**Q. 3. What did Anne Frank do to take things off her chest :**

(a) She would sleep a lot, (b) She would eat a lot, (c) She would play a lot, (d) None of these.

**Ans. 1. (d), 2. (b), 3. (d).**

**Q. 4. Who is the thirteen year old school girl ?**

**Ans.** The thirteen year old school girl is Anne Frank.

**Q. 5. Why does she want to write a diary ?**

**Ans.** She wants to write a diary to get things off her chest, things which she cannot share with anyone.

**Q. 6. Who is 'I' in the above lines.**

**Ans.** 'I' the writer here is Anne Frank a German Jewish girl.

(2) *'Paper has more patience than people.' I thought of this saying on one of those days when I was feeling a little depressed and was sitting at home, with my chin in my hands, bored and listless, wondering whether to stay in or go out. I finally stayed where I was brooding. Yes, paper does have more patience, and since I am not planning to let anyone else read this stiff-backed notebook, grandly referred to as a 'diary' unless I should ever find a real friend, it won't probably make a bit of difference.*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. From which lesson has this text been taken :**

(a) Black Aeroplane, (b) From the Diary of Anne Frank, (c) His first flight.

**Q. 2. Who has more patience than people :**

(a) man, (b) paper, (c) hands.

**Q. 3. Which of these words is similar to the word 'brooding' :**

(a) happy, (b) thoughtful, (c) wandering.

**Ans. 1. (b), 2. (b), 3. (b).**

**Q. 4. 'Paper has more patience than people.' Explain.**

**Ans.** It means that one can write about anything on paper. It does not complain or ask embarrassing questions just like people does.

**Q. 5. Why did Anne feel depressed ?**

**Ans.** Anne had a large family but she had none with whom she could share her inner thoughts. So, she felt depressed just like people does.

**Q. 6. Did Anne write the diary for all to read ?**

**Ans.** No, she wanted to share it with only a real friend.

(3) *Let me put it more clearly, since no one will believe that a 13 year old girl is completely alone in the world. And I am not. I have loving parents and a sixteen year old*



sister and there are about thirty people. I can call friends. I have a family, loving aunts and a good home. No, on the surface I seem to have everything, except my one true friend. All I think about when I am with friends is having a good time. I can't bring myself to talk about anything but ordinary everyday things. We don't seem to be able to get any closer, and that's the problem.

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What does Anne lack among the family ?**

**Ans.** She lacks a friend in whom she can confide her inner feelings.

**Q. 2. Name the lesson from which the extract has been taken ?**

**Ans.** The name of the lesson is 'From the Diary of Anne Frank'.

**Q. 3. What problem does she talk about ?**

**Ans.** She tells us that though there are people with whom she can talk about ordinary things but they are not close enough to share her inner thoughts.

(4) *To enhance the image of this long awaited friend in my imagination I don't want to jot down the facts in this diary the way most people do but I want the diary to be my friend, and I am going to call this friend 'Kitty'.*

*Since, no one would understand a word of my stories to Kitty if I were to plunge right in, I'd better provide a brief sketch of my life, much as I dislike doing so.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who or what is 'Kitty' ?**

**Ans.** Anne Frank gives the diary a name : 'Kitty'. It is her diary and her friend.

**Q. 2. Why does she provide a brief sketch before starting.?**

**Ans.** She provides a brief sketch of herself and her family so that people may understand the story better.

**Q. 3. What does she dislike doing ?**

**Ans.** She dislikes providing a brief sketch of her life.

(5) *Our entire class is quacking in its boots. The reason of course, is the forthcoming meeting in which the teachers decide who'll move up to the next form and who will be kept back. Half the class is making bets. G.N. and I laugh ourselves silly at the two boys behind us, C.N. and Jacques, who have shaken their entire holiday saving on their bet. From morning to night, it's 'You are going to pass'. 'No, I am not'. Yes, you are ! 'No, I'm not. Even G's pleading glances and my angry outbursts can't calm them down. If you ask me there are so many dummies that about a quarter of the class should be kept back, but teachers are the most unpredictable creatures on Earth.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why was the entire class quacking in their boots ?**

**Ans.** The entire class was quacking in their boots because the teachers were going to announce the result.

**Q. 2. What makes the girls laugh silly ?**

**Ans.** They girls laugh silly at the two boys C.N. and Jacques who are betting on the result.

**Q. 3. Who is G.N. ?**

**Ans.** G.N. is a friend of Anne Frank.

**Q. 4. What does Anne say about the class ?**

**Ans.** She says that there are so many dummies in the class that should be kept back.

(6) *I began thinking about the subject while chewing the tip of my fountain pen. Anyone could ramble on and leave big spaces between words but the trick was to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking. I thought and thought, and suddenly I had an idea. I wrote the three pages Mr. Kissing has assigned me and was satisfied ? I argued that talking is a student's trait and that I would do my best to keep it under control but that I would never be able to cure myself of the habit since my mother talked as much as I did if not more, and that there's not much you can do about inherited traits.*



**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What subject was Anne Frank thinking about ?**

**Ans.** The subject which Anne Frank was thinking about was 'Chatterbox' which the teacher had given her as an assignment.

**Q. 2. What is an inherited trait ?**

**Ans.** An inherited trait is a trait in the personality which one acquires from the parents.

**Q. 3. What did she promise to the teacher ?**

**Ans.** She promised that she would try to keep her talking under control.

*(7) The class roared. I had to laugh too, though I had nearly exhausted my ingenuity on the topic of chatterboxes. It was time to come up with something else, something original. My friend Sanne, who's good at poetry, offered to help me write the essay from beginning to end in verse and I jumped for joy.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What assignment was Anne given this time ?**

**Ans.** This time the teacher asked her to write about, "Quack, Quack, Quack said Mistress Chatterbox."

**Q. 2. Who offered to help her ?**

**Ans.** Her friend Sanne, who was good at poetry offered to help her in writing the assignment.

**Q. 3. What did she write about this time ?**

**Ans.** She wrote about a mother duck, father swan and three ducklings. In the story, the father swan killed the three ducklings because they quacked too much.

*(8) I finished my poem and it was beautiful ! It was about a mother duck and a swan with three baby ducklings who were beaten to death by the father because they quacked too much. Luckily Mr. Keesing took the joke the right way. He read the poem to the class adding his own comments, and to several other classes as well. Since then, I've been allowed to talk and haven't been assigned any extra homework. On the contrary, Mr. Keesing's always making jokes these days.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why were the ducklings beaten to death ?**

**Ans.** The three ducklings were beaten to death because they quacked too much.

**Q. 2. Did Mr. Keesing like the poem ? How can you say this ?**

**Ans.** Mr. Keesing liked the poem. He read it to their class and to other classes too.

**Q. 3. Was Anne given more punishment ?**

**Ans.** No, the teacher understood Anne's point of view.

**Q. 4. What change did it bring in Mr. Keesing ?**

**Ans.** It changed the teacher a bit. Now, the serious teacher was seen making jokes in the class.

**Short Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. What makes writing in a diary a strange experience for Anne Frank ?**

**Ans.** Writing in a diary is a strange experience for Anne Frank because she has never written anything earlier. Also, she thinks no one would like to read what a thirteen year old school girl thought.

**Q. 2. Why does Anne want to keep a diary ?**

**Ans.** Anne has a big, loving family but she finds that she cannot confide her inner thoughts and feelings to anyone of the family. She does the writing to get all kinds of things off her chest.

**Q. 3. Why did Anne think she could confide more in her diary than in people ?**

**Ans.** Anne could confide more in her diary than in people because she thought paper had more patience than people. The diary would keep her secret like a sincere friend.



**Q. 4. Why does Anne provide a brief sketch of her life ?**

**Ans.** Anne provides a brief sketch of her life at the beginning so that people may understand the events and incidents better.

**Q. 5. What tells you that Anne loved her grandmother ?**

**Ans.** Anne was left with her Grandma at Aachen when her parents moved to Holland. The lady died in 1942. Anne had fond memories of her.

**Q. 6. Why was Mr. Keesing annoyed with Anne ? What did he ask her to do ?**

**Ans.** Mr. Keesing, the maths teacher was annoyed with Anne because she kept on talking in the class. He warned her many times but to little effect. So, he asked her, as a punishment, to write an essay on the topic 'A chatterbox'.

**Q. 7. How did Anne justify her being a chatter-box in her essay ?**

**Ans.** Anne justified her being a chatterbox by saying that talking was a student's trait. She further added that her mother too was equally talkative, so it was an inherited trait. She, however, promised to try to control it.

**Q. 8. Do you think Mr. Keesing was a strict teacher ?**

**Ans.** On the surface Mr. Keesing seems to be strict. but the topics he gives for writing suggest a funny vein in him. Also, he does want Anne to be more attentive in the class.

**Q. 9. What made Mr. Keesing allow Anne to talk in the class ?**

**Ans.** In her lost assignment Anne wrote a poem describing how the father swan killed the ducklings for quacking too much. The poem hinted at Mr. Keesing's cruel treatment. Mr. Keesing took the poem in right spirit and allowed Anne to talk in the class.

**Q. 10. Was Anne right when she said that the world would not be interested in the musings of a thirteen year old girl ?**

**Ans.** That was Anne's assumption when she wrote the diary today we know that it is a very popular book, a unique record of what Jews faced in Hitler's Germany.

**Q. 11. Why does Anne need to give a brief sketch of her family ? Does she treat 'Kitty' as an insider or an outsider ?**

**Ans.** Anne gives a brief description of her family because in its absence she feels, the diary may not be correctly understood. She considers the diary an insider and addresses it, "My Dearest Kitty".

**Q. 12. How does Anne feel about her father, her grandmother, Mrs. Kuperus and Mr. Keesing ? What do these tell you about her ?**

**Ans.** To Anne, her father is the most adorable father, she loves her grandmother very much. Mrs. Kuperus was the head-mistress and her teacher in class 6. She has a deep love for her too. With Mr. Keesing who seems to be a strict teacher, she argues but does not show her disrespect. This shows that she is a loving and respectful girl.

**Q. 13. What does Anne write in her first essay ?**

**Ans.** In her first essay, Anne defends her talkative nature. She says that it is a student's trait. She also adds that she inherited the trait from her mother who is equally talkative. However, she promises to curb her tendency.

**Q. 14. Anne says teachers are most unpredictable. Is Mr. Keesing unpredictable ? How ?** (M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** It is Anne's observation about teachers. We all are sometimes unpredictable. About Mr. Keesing the observation is correct. Quite unexpectedly, after the third assignment, he turns soft to Anne and allows her to talk in the class.

**Q. 15. Describe Anne Frank's family.**

**Ans.** Anne had loving parents and an elder sister Margot. She had a family of about thirty people which included aunts. The problem was, Anne found it difficult to share her inner feelings with them.



**Q. 16. Why was Anne's entire class anxious and nervous ?**

**Ans.** Anne's entire class was anxious and nervous because it was the result day children were waiting for the meeting in which the teachers would decide who'll move to the next class and who will be kept back.

**Q. 17. How did sanne help Anne frank in writing the third essay ?**

**Ans.** In the third assignment Anne frank had to write about, "Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress chatterbox". By this time Anne had exhausted all her knowledge about chatterboxes. Her friend Sanne, who was good at writing poetry helped her and they came up with a poem about a duck family in which the father duck killed the three ducklings because they quacked too much. Mr. Keesing took the essay in the right spirit and allowed Anne to talk in the class.

**Q. 18. What kind of a teacher was Mr. Keesing ?**

**Ans.** No, doubt, Mr. Keesing was a strict teacher. He wanted Anne to be disciplined in the class. So he gave her writing assignments but he also saw her point of view and allowed her some freedom to talk. This shows his considerate nature. Also, he took the poem lightly which means he was not morose. He had a sense of humour too.

**Q. 19. Why did Margot and Anne stay with their grandmother ?**

**Ans.** When their parents shifted to Holland Margot and Anne stayed with their grandmother so that the parents could make proper arrangements for the family. Later they were also taken to Holland.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What do you think of Anne's talent for writing essays which she wrote convincingly, when punished by her teacher ?**

**Ans.** As punishment for talking too much Mr. Keesing asked Anne to write an essay on 'A chatterbox'. Anne gave the topic good thought and then presented her ideas succidly. She argued that talking was a student's trait, she promised that she could try to curtail it but she could not completely cure it because she had inherite the trait from her mother. The third time she had to write about, "Quack, Quack, Quack said mistress chatterbox", She wrote a funny poem about the three ducklings who quacked so much that their father killed them. Mr. Keesing got the point and never punished Anne for talking too much. This shows that she was a good writer and sincere student.

**Q. 2. Write a brief character sketch of Mr. Keesing. What change took place in him after reading the third essay by Anne ?**

**Ans.** Mr. Keesing is a person who loves discipline. He does not like children to talk in the class. For this he punishes Anne by asking her to write an essay on "A chatterbox". Anne submits the essay but still keeps on talking in the class. She is now assigned to write on "An neorrigible chatterbox". On the third day she again gets an extra assignment, "Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress chetterbox". It shows Mr. Keesing did want Anne to change. We may conclude that he was worried about his student. The third assignement changed everything. Mr. Keesing realised that harsh punishment alone cannot bring improvement in the students. He appreciated the essay, never gave Anne another assignment for talking and has even started making jokes in the class.

**Q. 3. Why did Anne think she could confide more in her diary than in the people ?**

**Ans.** Anne says, "Paper has more patience than people". She does have a big family but there is no one in whom she could confide. We should also remember that these were turbulent days, when she got the diary- a birithday gift for her 13<sup>th</sup> birthday, she decided to make it her friend and named it kitty. She knew that no one would be intrested in the musing of a thirteen year old school girl and her secrets will be safe there. The diary will not react to her thoughts as people do. Thus, in the diary, she found a friend she needed.



## 5. GLIMPSES OF INDIA

### I. A BAKER FROM GOA

— Lucio Rodrigues

#### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *Our elders are often heard reminiscing nostalgically about those good old Portugese days, the Portugese and their famous loaves of bread. These eaters of loaves might have vanished but the makers are still there we still have amongst us the mixers, the moulders and those who bake the loaves.*

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What did the elders reminisce about ?

Ans. The elders reminisced the good old Portugese days, the Portugese people and the loaves of bread.

Q. 2. Who are still there ?

Ans. The mixers, the moulders and the bakers, workers of the bakeries are still there.

Q. 3. Who were those eaters of loaves ?

Ans. They were the Portugese. They have now gone.

(2) *During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide. He used to come at least twice a day, once, when he set out in the morning on his selling round and then again, when he returned after emptying his huge basket. The jingling thud of his bamboo woke us up from sleep and we ran to meet and greet him. Why was it so ? Was it for the love of loaf ? Not at all the loaves were bought by some Paskine or Bastine, the maid servant of the house ? What we longed for were those bread bangles which we choose carefully, sometimes it was sweet bread of special make.*

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What woke up the writer ?

Ans. The jingling thud of the baker's bamboo woke the writer from sleep.

Q. 2. What were Paskine or Bastine ?

Ans. Paskine or Bastine were maid servants.

Q. 3. What did the children long for ?

Ans. The children longed for the bread bangles. They were sweet bread of special make.

(3) *Marriage gifts are meaningless, without the sweet bread known as 'bol' just as a party or a feast loses its charm without bread. Not enough can be said to show how important a baker can be for a village. The lady of the house must prepare sandwiches on the occasion of her daughter's engagement, cakes and bolinhas are a must for christmas as well as other festivals. Thus, the presence of the baker's furnace in the village is absolutely essential.*

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. Why is a baker's furnace necessary in a village ?

Ans. A baker's furnace is necessary in a village because bread is a daily food items as well as an ingredient for eatables on special occasions.

Q. 2. What are essential for christmas and other festivals ?

Ans. Cakes and Bohinhas are essential for christmas and other festivals.

(4) *Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days. The baker and his family never starved. He, his family and his servants always looked happy and prosperous. Their plump physique was an open testimony to this. Even today, any person with a jack-fruit like physical appearance is easily compared to a baker.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why did the baker and his family never starve ?**

**Ans.** The baker and his family never starved because baking was a profitable business in those old days.

**Q. 2. What can be a person with a jack-fruit like appearance ?**

**Ans.** A person with a jack-fruit like appearance here is a plump person.

**Q. 3. 'Bakers in Goa are generally lean and thin!' True or false ?**

**Ans.** False, they are generally pleasantly fat.

*(5) The baker usually collected his bills at the end of the month. Monthly accounts used to be recorded on some wall in pencil. Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days. This baker and his family never starved. He, his family and his servants always looked happy and prosperous. Their plump physique was an open testimony to this. Even today any person with a jackfruit like physical appearance is easily compared to baker.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Where were the monthly accounts of the baker recorded :**

(a) Wall, (b) Paper, (c) Diary, (d) Notebook.

**Q. 2. The baker and his family never starve because was :**

(a) Not profitable, (b) Profitable, (c) Not in demand, (d) Free.

**Q. 3. The baker and his family always starved.**

**(True/False)**

**Ans.** 1. (a), 2. (b), 3. False.

**Short Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. What are the elder in Goa nostalgic about ?**

**Ans.** The elders in Goa are nostalgic about the good old Portugese day, Portugese people and the loaves of bread.

**Q. 2. Is bread-making still popular in Goa ? How do you know ?**

**Ans.** Bread making is still popular in Goa. The narrator says that though the Portugese have gone away, the traditional bakers, their furnaces, the mixers and moulders still exist.

**Q. 3. What is the baker called ?**

**Ans.** The baker is called 'pader' in Goa, the portugese word for baker.

**Q. 4. Where would the baker come everyday ? Why did the children run to meet him ?**

**Ans.** The baker would come, once early in the morning and the second time after selling his bread. The children ran to meet him for the bread bangles.

**Q. 5. What did the bakers wear ?**

(i) In the Portugese days ?

(ii) When the author was young ?

**Ans.** (i) In the Portugese days the bakers wore a single piece long frock called a Kabai.

(ii) When the author was young he saw the bakers wearing shirts and short trousers.

**Q. 6. Who invites to comment, 'He is dressed like a pader ?' Why ?**

**Ans.** Any person wearing a half pants reaching just below the knees invites such a comment. This is because the bakers used to wear such a dress.

**Q. 7. Is bread an important part of Goan life ? How do you know this ?**

**Ans.** Yes, bread is an important part of Goan life. It is essential for marriage gifts, to make sandwiches on the occasion of a girls engagement and for all festivals.

**Q. 8. How did the baker make his entry ?**

**Ans.** The baker made a 'jhang jhang' sound with his bamboo staff. He supported the basket on his head with one hand and banged the bamboo on the ground with the other. The sound was the announcement of the baker's arrival.



**Q. 9. What did the baker do first once he reached a house ?**

**Ans.** The baker first greeted the lady of the house with 'Good morning'. Then he placed his basket on the vertical bamboo. He pushed the children aside with a gentle rebuke who always gathered around him.

**Q. 10. Why was the baker's furnace essential in a traditional Goan village ?**

**Ans.** Bread was a vital component of food in Goan villages. Different kinds of bread were needed for different occasions. 'Bol' were essential as marriage gifts; cakes and bolinhas were required for festivals. So the baker's furnace was an essential in a traditional Goan village.

**Q. 11. How was the baker dressed ?**

**Ans.** In the olden days the bakers used to wear a long loose frock called a kabai. In the later years, they were seen wearing shirts and trousers which were longer than half pants but shorter than full length ones. It was so typical that anyone who wore such a pants was called padar.

**Q. 12. How did the children behave when they were pushed aside with a mild rebuke by the padar ?**

**Ans.** The baker would push the children away so that he could deliver the bread. The children would climb a bench or a parapet and peep into the basket. They wanted to have the bread bangles.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Describe the importance of the baker in the Goan villages ?**

**Ans.** Goa, as we know was a Portuguese colony and bread was an essential item of food in their life. The bread 'Bol' was an integral part of marriage gifts. People needed bread for parties and feasts. The lady of the house made sandwiches for her daughter's engagement ceremony; cakes and sweets were a must for Christmas and other festivals. Thus, the baker and his furnace were intermixed in the life of the Goan villages.

**Q. 2. What does a jack fruit like appearance mean ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** It generally mean a plump physique. All people who are engaged in the bakery business in Goa are wealthy and they look like Jack fruit.

## II. COORG

— Lokesh Abrol

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *Coorg or Kodagu, the smallest district of Karnataka, is home to evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations. Evergreen rainforests cover 30 percent of this district. During the monsoons, it pours enough to keep many visitors away. The season of joy commences from September and continues till March. The weather is perfect with some showers thrown in for good measure.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. The extract is from the lesson.**

**Ans.** Coorg.

**Q. 2. Do visitors visit Coorg during the monsoons ? Why ?**

**Ans.** Visitors don't visit Coorg during the monsoons because the place has heavy rains.

**Q. 3. Which is the best time to visit Coorg ?**

**Ans.** The best time to visit Coorg is between September and March.

(2) *The fiercely independent people of Coorg are possibly of Greek or Arabic descent. As one story goes, a part of Alexander's army moves South along the coast and settled here when return became impractical. These people married among the locals and their culture*

is apparent in the martial traditions, marriage and religious rites, which are distinct from the Hindu mainstream.

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What could be the origin of the Coorg people ?**

**Ans.** They could be either Greek or Arabic.

**Q. 2. Do the Coorg's have traditions similar to Hindu mainstream ?**

**Ans.** No, their martial traditions, marriage and religious right are different from the Hindus.

**Q. 3. From which lesson is the extract taken and who is the writer.**

**Ans.** The extract is from the lesson 'Coorg' written by Lokesh Abrol.

(3) *Coorgi homes have a tradition of hospitality and they are more than willing to recount numerous tales of valour related to their sons and fathers. The coorg regiment is one of the most decorated with Indian Army, and the first chief of the Indian Army, General Cariappa, was a coorgi. Even now, Kodavus are the only people in India permitted to carry firearms without a licence.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What do the Coorg's like to recount ?**

**Ans.** They like to recount tales of bravery related to their sons and fathers.

**Q. 2. To which community did the first chief of the Indian Army belong ?**

**Ans.** The first drief of the Indian Army General Cariappa belonged to the coorgis.

**Q. 3. What special privilege do the Kodavus enjoy ?**

**Ans.** The Kodavus enjoy the special priviledge. They are permitted to carry firearms without a licence.

(4) *The river cauvery, obtains its water from the hills and forests of Coorg. Mahaseer—a large freshwater fish—abound in these waters. Kingfishers dive for their catch, while squirrels and langurs drop partially eaten fruit for the mischief of enjoying the flash and ripple effect in the clear water.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What is a Mahaseer ?**

**Ans.** Mahaseer is a large freshwater fish found in the cauvery.

**Q. 2. Which animals are referred to here ?**

**Ans.** The writer refers to the Mahaseer, the king fisher, squirrels and langurs.

(5) *The most laidback individuals become converts to the life of high energy adventure with river rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock climbing and mountain, biking. Numerous walking trails are a favourite with trackers birds, bees, butterflies are there to give you company. Macaques, Malabar squirrels, langurs and slender loris keep a watchful eye from the tree canopy. I do however prefer to step aside for wild elephants.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What high energy adventures can one enjoy in Coorg ?**

**Ans.** One can enjoy river rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock-climbing, mountain biking and trekking.

**Q. 2. Which birds and animals can one see ?**

**Ans.** One can see macaques, malabar squirrels, langurs and loris as well as birds, bees and butterflies.

**Q. 3. What does the writer warn us against ?**

**Ans.** The writer warns us to step aside when wild elephants are passing.

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Where is Coorg ?**

**Ans.** Coorg is situated between the coastal town of Mangalore and Mysore.



**Q. 2. What is the story about the Kodavu people's descent ?**

**Ans.** The story is that a part of Alexander's army moved south along the coast and settled here when they found the return impractical. The other story tells us that they may have an Arabic origin. The proof is the long, black coat with a waist band called a Kuppia.

**Q. 3. Describe Coorg's weather ? When is it more pleasant for the tourists to visit Coorg ?**

**Ans.** Coorg receives heavy rainfall during the monsoons. So, the best time for the tourists to visit Coorg is from September to March. When our can get the fragrance of coffee in the air.

**Q. 4. How is the Coorgi tradition of bravery recognised in modern India ?**

**Ans.** The Coorg regiment is one of the most decorated of regiments in Indian Army. The Kudavus are the only people in India who are permitted to carry firearms without a licence. Also, the first chief on Indian Army cariappa was a coorgie.

**Q. 5. Give an account of the river that originates from Coorg ?**

**Ans.** The Cauvery originates from the hills of Coorg. Mahaseer—a large fresh water fish abounds here. The Mahouts bathe their elephants here. One can see squirrels, langurs and kingfishers on the trees beside the river.

**Q. 6. Describe the wildlife of Coorg ?**

**Ans.** Coorg is home to many species of birds and animals. The river cauvery abounds in Mahaseer. We can see kingfishers, squirrels, langurs, loris and wild elephants here. Birds, bees and butter flies present a beautiful scene.

**Q. 7. What are Brahmagiri and Nisargadhama ?**

**Ans.** Brahmagiri and Nisargadhama are both places of tourist importance in Coorg. From the Brahmagiri hills one can get a panoramic view of coorge. Nisargadhama is sixty four acre island which can be reached by using a rope-bridge. Here one may see Tibetan Buddhist monks.

**Q. 8. Why is Coorg called the land of rolling hills ?**

**Ans.** Coorg is called the land of rolling hills because it is situated on the gentle sloping hills. Because of heavy rains, the hills are covered with lush green rainforests.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a paragraph about Coorg and its people.**

**Ans.** Coorg or Kodagu is the smallest district of Karnataka. It is home to evergreen rain forests, spices and coffee plantations. It is such a beautiful place that it is called a piece of heaven. During the monsoons the place gets heavy rains. The best time to visit it is therefore between September and March. It offers adventure sports like river rafting, canosing, rappe-ling, rock climbing, mountain biking and trekking. The coorgies are supposed to be descendents from Greek or Arabic people. They are brave and hospitable people. The coorg regiment of the Indian Army has been awarded lots of gallantry awards. Our first chief of Indian Army General cariappa was a coorgi. So, the place and the people both give us a glimpse of the vast diversity of India.

**Q. 2. Write a note on the wildlife and vegetation (Flora and fauna) of Coorg.**

**Or, How can we say that Coorg is a piece of heaven on the Earth ?**

**Ans.** Coorg is rightly called a piece of heaven on the Earth. The river Cauvery originates from the hills here. Thirty percent of the area is covered with evergreen rainforests. The fish Mahaseer abounds the river. We can see kingfishers, squirrels and langurs. Then, there are macaques, Malabar squirrels, langurs and slender loris sitting on the trees. There are birds, bees and butterflies which add to the natural beauty. The landscape is covered with coffee plantations and spices along with evergreen rainforests.

### III. TEA FROM ASSAM

— Arup Kumar Datta

#### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *Against the back drop of densely wooded hills a sea of tea bushes stretched as far as the eye could see. Dwarfing the tiny tea plants were tall sturdy shade trees and amidst the orderly rows of bushes moved doll like figures. In the distance was an ugly building with smoke billowing out of tall chimneys. 'Hey! a tea garden'! Rajvir cried excitedly.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What is meant by 'a sea of tea-bushes' ?**

**Ans.** A sea of tea bushes means lots and lots of tea bushes.

**Q. 2. What were the doll like figures ?**

**Ans.** The doll like figures were the tea-pluckers.

**Q. 3. Why was Rajvir excited ?**

**Ans.** Rajvir was excited because he had not seen a tea garden before.

(2) *Bodhidharma an ancient Buddhist ascetic cut off his eyelids because he felt sleepy during meditations. Ten tea plants grew out of the eyelids. The leaves of these plants, when put in hot water and drunk banished sleep. "Tea was first drunk in China". Rajvir added, 'as far back as 2700 B.C.'*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why did Bodhidharma cut off his eyelids?**

**Ans.** Bodhidharma cut off his eyelids because he felt sleepy during meditation.

**Q. 2. When and where was tea first drunk ?**

**Ans.** Tea was first drunk in China as far back as 2700 B.C.

**Q. 3. What grew out of the eyelids ?**

**Ans.** Ten tea plants grew out of the eye-lids.

(3) *"This is the second flush or sprouting period, isn't it, Mr. Barua ?" Rajvir asked, "It lasts from May to July and yields the best tea."*

*"You seem to have done your homework before coming," Pranjal's father said in surprise.*

*'Yes, Mr. Barua,' Rajvir admitted, "But I hope to learn much more while I am here."*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who is Mr. Barua ?**

**Ans.** Mr. Barua is Pranjal's father.

**Q. 2. For how long does the second flush last ?**

**Ans.** The second flush lasts from May to July.

**Q. 3. Where did the conversation take place ?**

**Ans.** The conversation between Rajvir and Mr. Barua took place while they were going to Dhekiabari, where Pranjal's father was manager of a tea garden.

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How can we say that tea is a popular drink?**

**Ans.** Over eighty crore cups of tea are drunk daily in the world. One can find tea being sold at all railway-stations in India. People enjoy a hot cup of tea at any time.

**Q. 2. Why did Pranjal not share Rajvir's excitement ?**

**Ans.** Rajvir had never seen tea-plantations. He was excited to see so much greenery. Pranjal did not share his excitement because he had been born and brought up on a tea-plantation. He was quite familiar with the landscape.

**Q. 3. Why was Rajveer excited to see the tea garden ?**

**Ans.** Rajvir was excited because he had never seen so much greenery and he wanted to enjoy the beauty of garden with his friends.



**Q. 4. When and where did the drinking of tea start and how did it come to Europe?**

**Ans.** The drinking of tea started first in China as far back as 2700 B.C. It came to Europe in 16<sup>th</sup> century. In the early days tea was drunk as medicine only.

**Q. 5. What did Rajvir see in the Dhekiabari tea-estate?**

**Ans.** Rajvir had never seen a tea-estate before. He was surprised to see acre upon acre of tea bushes on both sides of the road. They were all pruned to the same size. The pluckers, wearing plastic aprons were plucking the newly sprouted leaves.

**Q. 6. What is the Chinese legend about the discovery of tea leaves? (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.** According to the Chinese legend, a Chinese emperor always drank boiled water. Once some leaves from the burning twigs fell into the water. The leaves gave the water a delicious flavour. Those were tea leaves.

## 6. MIJBIL—THE OTTER

— Gavin-Maxwell

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *When I casually mentioned this to a friend, he as casually replied that I had better get one in the Tigris marshes, for there they were as common as mosquitoes and were often tamed by the Arabs.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the author casually mention to a friend?**

**Ans.** The author casually mentioned to a friend that he wanted to have an otter as a pet.

**Q. 2. What did the friend suggest?**

**Ans.** The friend suggested that the Tigris marshes was the best place to get an otter.

They were very common these.

(2) *Mijbil as I called the otter, was in fact of a race previously unknown to science and was at length christened by zoologists Lutrogate Perspicillata Maxwell or Maxwell's otter. For the first twenty four hours Mijbil was neither hostile nor friendly, he was simply aloof and indifferent, choosing to sleep on the floor as far away from my bed as possible.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What scientific name was given to Mijbil?**

**Ans.** Mijbil was given the scientific name Maxwell's otter.

**Q. 2. How did Mijbil behave in the beginning?**

**Ans.** He was aloof and indifferent for a day.

**Q. 3. Where did he sleep?**

**Ans.** He slept on the floor as far away from the author as possible.

(3) *I made a body belt for him and took him on a lead to the bathroom, where for half an hour he went wild with joy in the water, plunging and rolling in it, shooting up and down the length of the bathtub underwater, and making enough slosh and splash for a hippo. This, I was to learn is a characteristic of the otters.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did Mijbil do in the bathtub?**

**Ans.** Mijbil went wild with joy and plunged and rolled in the bathtub making big splashes of water.

**Q. 2. What is a characteristic of the otters?**

**Ans.** Playing with water is a characteristic of the otter.

(4) *Very soon Mij would follow me without a lead and come to me when I called his name. He spent most of his time in play. He spent hours shuffling a rubber ball round the room like a four footed soccer player using all his feet to dribble the ball, and he could also throw it, with a powerful flick of the neck, to a surprising height and distance.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What did Mij spend hours doing ?**

**Ans.** Mij spent hours shuffling a rubber ball round the room.

**Q. 2. What could he do with his neck ?**

**Ans.** With a powerful flick of the neck he could through the ball to a surprising height or distance.

**Q. 3. Would Mijbil come to the author when he called his name.**

**Ans.** Yes, he would come to the author when he called his name.

(5) *The British airline to London would not take animals, so I booked a flight to Paris on another airline and from there to London. The airline insisted that Mij should be packed into a box not more than eighteen inches square, to be carried on the floor at my feet.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why did the writer not fly to London directly ?**

**Ans.** He did not fly to London directly because the British airline did not allow animals.

**Q. 2. How was Mij to be carried ?**

**Ans.** Mij was to be packed in a box not more than eighteen inches square on the floor at the author's feet.

**Q. 3. The writer booked a flight to ....(a)..... and from these to .....(b)..... .**

**Ans.** (a) Paris, (b) London.

(6) *There was complete silence from the box, but from its airholes and chinks around the lid, blood had trickled and dried. I whipped off the lock and tore open the lid and Mij, exhausted and blood spattered, whimpered and caught at my leg.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What was put in the box ?**

**Ans.** Mijbil, the otter, was put in the box.

**Q. 2. What was seen around the airholes and chinks around the lid ?**

**Ans.** Dried blood was seen around the airholes and chinks around the lid.

**Q. 3. How did Mijbil look ?**

**Ans.** He looked exhausted. Blood was spattered over his body.

(7) *I was rushed through to it by infuriated officials, luckily the seat booked for me was at the extreme front. I covered the floor around my feet with newspapers, rang for the airhostess and gave her a parcel of fish (for Mij) to keep in a cool place. I took her into confidence about the events of the last half hour.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why were the airport officials infuriated ?**

**Ans.** The airport officials were infuriated because the narrator arrived late at the airport.

**Q. 2. Where was the narrator's seat ?**

**Ans.** It was at the extreme front.

**Q. 3. What did the parcel contain ?**

**Ans.** The parcel contained fish for Mijbil.

(8) *Mij was out of the box in a flash. He disappeared high speed down the aircraft. There were squacks and shrieks and a woman stood up on her seat screaming 'a rat, a rat'.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why did the woman scream ?**

**Ans.** The woman screamed when she saw Mijbil. She thought it was a rat.



**Q. 2. Where did the event take place ?**

**Ans.** The event took place inside the plane when Mijbil came out of the box.

**Q. 3. From which lesson is the extract taken ?**

**Ans.** The extract is taken from the lesson—"Mijbil-the otter."

(9) *He would play for hours with a selection of toys, ping-pong balls, marbles rubber fruit and a terrapin shell that I had brought back from his native marshes. With the ping-pong ball he invented a game of his own which could keep him engrossed for up to half an hour at a time. A suitcase that I had taken to Iraq had become damaged on the journey here, so that the lid, when closed remained at a slope from one end to another.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Who is 'he' in the extract ?**

**Ans.** 'He' is the authors pet other—Mijbil.

**Q. 2. What game did Mij invent ?**

**Ans.** Mij would put the ping-pong ball at one end of the suitcase and ran to catch it as it rolled down the slope. He enjoyed the game for as long as half an hour.

**Q. 3. What were Mijbil's toys ?**

**Ans.** Mijbil's toys were ping-pong balls, marbles, rubber fruit and a terrapin shell.

(10) *I faced a continuous barrage of conjectural questions that sprayed all the mustellines but the otter; more random guesses hit on a baby seal, and a squirrel. 'Is that a walrus, mister?' reduced me to giggles, and outside a dog show I heard 'a hippo', A beaver, a bear cub, a leopard—one apparantly that had changed its spot and a 'brontosaur'. Mij was anything but an otter.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What were the questions the author was asked about ?**

**Ans.** The author was continuously asked what type of animal Mijbil was.

**Q. 2. What were some of the wild guesses made by people about Mijbil ?**

**Ans.** People guessed that it was a baby seal, a walrus, a hippo, a bear cub a leopard and even a brontosaur.

**Q. 3. What was the continuous barrage ?**

**Ans.** The continuous barrage was a volley of questions about Mijbil.

(11) *Early in the New Year of 1956 I travelled to Southern Iraq. By then it had crossed my mind that I should like to keep an otter instead of a dog, and that Camusfearna, ringed by water a stone's throw from its door, would be an eminently suitable spot for this experiment.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. The author travelled :**

(a) USA, (b) Iraq, (c) Australia, (d) Japan.

**Q. 2. When did the author travel :**

(a) In 1947, (b) In 1999, (c) In 1956, (d) In 1971.

**Q. 3. The author wanted to keep an Otter instead of ..... :**

(a) Dog, (b) Cat, (c) Monkey, (d) Cow.

**Ans.** 1. (b), 2. (c), 3. (a).

**Short Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. What 'experiment' did Maxwell think Camus fearna would be suitable for ?**

**Ans.** Maxwell thought Camus Fearna would be a suitable place for the experiment of raising an Otter as a pet.

**Q. 2. Why does he go to Basra ? How long does he wait there and why ?**

**Ans.** The author went to Basra to collect one answer his mail from Europe. He had to wait there for five days as his mail did not arrive.

**Q. 3. How does he get the Otter ? Does he like it ? Pick out the words that tell you this.**

**Ans.** His friend had bought the Otter for him and sent it to the place where he was staying. He liked it and this is evident from the words he used as, "a thraldom of otters", and "an otter fixation".

**Q. 4. Why was the Otter named 'Maxwell's Otter' ?**

**Ans.** The Otter was named by zoologists as "Lutrogale Perspicillata Maxwell". Hence, it was called, "Maxwell's Otter" in short.

**Q. 5. How was Mijbil transported to England ?**

**Ans.** As pets were not allowed on British Airlines, Maxwell had to book a ticket on a different airline from Iraq to Paris and then Paris to London. Mij was put in a box that was not more than 18 inches square.

**Q. 6. What did Mij do to the box ?**

**Ans.** Mij did not feel comfortable in the box and tried to escape. In his attempt to escape, he tore into the metal lining of the box and in this process hurt himself.

**Q. 7. What happened when the box was opened ?**

**Ans.** When the box was opened, Mij was out of the box in a flash. He disappeared at high speed down the aircraft. There was a lot of chaos on the flight.

**Q. 8. What game had Mij invented ?**

**Ans.** Mij had invented a game with ping-pong ball. He would put the ball at one end of a sloping lid and then grab it as it ran to the other end.

**Q. 9. What group of animals do Otters belong to ?**

**Ans.** Otters basically belong to a comparatively small group of animals called Mustellines. The other animals of this group are badger, mongoose, weasel, stoat and others.

**Q. 10. What guesses did the Londoners make about what mij was ?**

**Ans.** Since Otters are not found in England So their guesses ranged from a baby seal, a squirrel, a walrus, a hippo, a beaver, a bear cub, a leopard and a brontosaur.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What activities of Mij tell us that he is intelligent, friendly and fun loving animal ?**

**Ans.** Mijbil definitely is an intelligent, friendly and fun loving animal. He plays with water like a child. He learns to turn the tap to allow water to come out. He plays with objects like rubber toys, marbles and ping pong balls. He nuzzles the author's face and neck and enjoys his walks in London streets. He walks over the school wall to surprise the children and teachers. All this, show that Mij is intelligent, fun loving and friendly.

**Q. 2. What questions about the otter did the author face when he took his for a walk in the London streets ? To which question did he award the highest marks ?**

**Ans.** To Londoners, Mij was a strange animal. They asked the writer what it was and guessed that it was a baby seal, a squirrel a walrus, a hippo, a beaver, a bear cub, a leopard with changed spots and a brontosaur. No one called it a Mustelline, a group that has mongoose, weasel, mink, etc. The best question however came from a man who was digging a hole. He said, "Here, mister what is that supposed to be ?"



## 7. MADAM RIDES THE BUS

— Vallikkannan

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *But for Valli, standing at the front door was every bit as enjoyable as any of the elaborate games other children played. Watching the street gave her many new unusual experiences.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What was enjoyable to Valli ?**

**Ans.** Valli enjoyed standing at the front door of her home and watching the street.

**Q. 2. What did she find most fascinating ?**

**Ans.** She found watching the bus, that went from her village to the nearby town most fascinating. She enjoyed watching the passengers travelling by bus.

**Q. 3. Who is Valli ?**

**Ans.** Valli or Valliammai is an eight year old girl.

(2) *Valli would stare wistfully at the people who got on or off the bus when it stopped at the street corner. Their faces would kindle in her longings, dreams and hopes. If one of her friends happened to ride the bus and tried to describe the sights of the town to her, Valli would be too jealous to listen and would shout in English, "Proud ! Proud ! ?"*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did the faces of the passengers kindle in her ?**

**Ans.** The faces of the passengers kindled in Valli a deep desire to ride the bus and see the world outside her village.

**Q. 2. Did Valli enjoy listening to the description of the sights of the town given by her friend ? What does it show.**

**Ans.** No, she was too jealous to listen. It shows her own strong desire to ride a bus.

**Q. 3. What would she shout ?**

**Ans.** She would shout "Proud ! Proud !".

(3) *The fare was thirty paise one way—"which is almost nothing at all", she heard one well-dressed man say, but to Valli, who scarcely saw that much money from one month to another, it seemed a fortune. The trip to the town took forty five minutes. On reaching town, if she stayed in her seat and paid another thirty paise, she could return home on the same bus. This meant that she could take the one o'clock afternoon bus, reach the town at one forty-five and be back by about two forty-five.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What was the bus fare to the town ?**

**Ans.** The bus fare to the town was thirty paise.

**Q. 2. How much time did the bus take to reach the town ?**

**Ans.** The bus took about forty five minutes to reach the town.

**Q. 3. What was Valli's plan ?**

**Ans.** Valli's plan was to take the one 'O'clock bus, reach there by one-forty five and be back by about two forty five.

(4) *On the other side was a deep ditch and then acres and acres of green fields—green, green green, as far as the eye could see suddenly, she was startled by a voice, "Listen, child", said the voice, "You shouldn't stand like that. Sit down."*

*Sitting down, she looked to see who had spoken. It was an elderly man who had honestly been concerned for her but she was annoyed by his attention. There's no one here who's a child. She said haughtily, "I've paid my thirty paise like everyone else."*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What did the elderly man say ?**

**Ans.** The elderly man called Valli a child and asked her not to stand on her seat.

**Q. 2. Why was Valli angry with the man ?**

**Ans.** Valli was angry because the man had called her 'a child'.

**Q. 3. Why did the man tell Valli to sit in her seat ?**

**Ans.** The man was afraid that Valli might fall and hurt herself. So she asked her to sit in her seat.

(5) *The conductor punched a ticket and handed it to her, "Just sit back and make yourself comfortable, why should you stand when you've paid for the seat ?"*

*"Because I want to". She answered, standing up again. 'But if you stand on the seat, you may fall and hurt yourself when the bus makes a sharp turn or hits a bump. That's why we want you to sit down, child."*

*"I am not a child, I tell you." She said irritably, "I'm eight years old."*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. How old, Valli said, she was ?**

**Ans.** Valli said she wasn't a child. She was eight years old.

**Q. 2. Why did the conductor ask her to sit ?**

**Ans.** The conductor asked her to sit because he was afraid, when the bus made a sharp turn or hit a bump she might fall and hurt herself.

(6) *Valli found the woman absolutely repulsive—such big holes she had in her earlobes and such ugly ear rings in them ! And she could smell the betel nut, the woman was chewing and see the betel juice that was threatening to spill over her lips at any moment.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What did Valli find repulsive in the woman?**

**Ans.** The woman had big holes in her earlobes and wore ugly earrings Valli found this repulsive.

**Q. 2. What was the woman chewing ?**

**Ans.** The woman was chewing betel-nuts.

**Q. 3. From which lesson is the extract taken ?**

**Ans.** The extract is taken from the lesson—"Madam rides a Bus."

(7) *Suddenly Valli clapped her hands with glee. A young cow, tail high in the air was running very fast, right in the middle of the road, right in front of the bus. The bus slowed to a crawl, and the driver sounded his horn again and again. But the more he honked, the more frightened the animal became and the faster it galloped—always right in front of the bus.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What did Valli see ?**

**Ans.** Valli saw a young cow running on the road.

**Q. 2. What did the driver do to make the cow more away ? What was the result ?**

**Ans.** The driver sounded his horn to make the cow more away but it was in vain.

(8) *Valli wasn't bored in the slightest and greeted everything with the same excitement she'd felt the first time. But suddenly she saw a young cow lying dead by the road side, just where it had been struck by some fast moving vehicle "Isn't that the same cow that ran in front of the bus on our trip to town ?" She asked the conductor." The conductor nodded and she was overcome with sadness.*

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. What did she see to make her sad ?**

**Ans.** She saw the same young cow, now lying dead, which she had seen running before the bus during her trip to town.



**Q. 2. Was Valli bored, seeing the same scene while returning ?**

**Ans.** No, she enjoyed it again as she had done on the journey to the town.  
(9) "Just a chit of a girl, she is", said her aunt and yet look how pokes her nose into our conversation, just as though she was a grown lady." Valli smiled to herself. She didn't want them to understand her smile. But then, there wasn't much chance of that, was there?

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did Valli's aunt say about her ?**

**Ans.** Valli's aunt called her just a chit of a girl. She was angry that Valli was trying to be a part of their conversation.

**Q. 2. Why didn't Valli want them to understand her smile ?**

**Ans.** She didn't want her mother and aunt to understand her smile. The ladies didn't know anything about Valli's trip to town and they never would, Valli felt.

(10) The most fascinating thing of all was the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town. It passed through her street each hour, once going to the town and once coming back. The sight of the bus filled each time with a new set of passengers, was a source of unending joy for Valli.

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What was Valli's favourite pastime :**

(a) Standing at the front door, (b) Standing at the back door, (c) Standing at the park, (d) Standing at the balcony.

**Q. 2. The source of unending joy for Valli was to watch :**

(a) Old passengers, (b) New passengers, (c) Children playing in the park, (d) Villagers.  
(True/False)

**Q. 3. It passed through her street each hour.**

**Ans.** 1. (a), 2. (b), 3. True.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What was Valli's favourite passtime ?**

**Ans.** Her favourite passtime was standing in the front doorway of her house and looking at the street outside.

**Q. 2. What was the source of unending joy for Valli ? What was her strongest desire ?**

**Ans.** A source of "unending joy for Valli" was the sight of the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town, filled with a new set of passengers each time it passed through her street. Her strongest desire was to ride on that bus.

**Q. 3. What did Valli find out about the bus journey ? How did she find these details ?**

**Ans.** She found out that the bus journey to the town took 45 minutes and the one way fare cost 30 paise. She found these details by listening to the conversations between her neighbours and the people usually travelled in the bus.

**Q. 4. What do you think Valli was planning to do ?**

**Ans.** Valli was planning to go the town by the bus and then return by the same bus.

**Q. 5. Why does the conductor call Valli madam ?**

**Ans.** Since Valli behaved very maturely everytime the conductor tried to help her. The conductor is a cheerful person and fond of joking. So, he calls Valli 'madam'.

**Q. 6. Why does Valli stand up on the seat ? What does she see now ?**

**Ans.** She stands up on the seat to enjoy the outside scenery from the moving bus.

**Q. 7. Why did not Valli want to make friends with the elderly woman ?**

**Ans.** The elderly woman looked unpleasant and ugly as she had big earholes and wore ugly earrings. Apart from this she was chewing betel and her mouth was also filled with betel juice. That's why Valli was not interested in her.

**Q. 8. How did Valli react for the dead cow ?**

**Ans.** When Valli saw the dead cow by the roadside, she was overwhelmed with sadness. The memory of the dead cow haunted her and she refused to look out of the window for the rest of the journey. (M.P. 2023)



**Q. 9. What did Valli see on her way that made her laugh ?**

**Ans.** Valli was overjoyed upon seeing a young cow, tail high in the air running very fast, right in the middle of the road just in front of the bus.

**Q. 10. Why didn't she get off the bus at the bus station ?**

**Ans.** She did not get off the bus at the bus station because she had to go back on that same bus. She just wanted to ride on the bus.

**Q. 11. Why didn't Valli want to go to the stall and have a drink ? What does this tell you about her ?**

**Ans.** Valli did not want to go to the stall and have a drink because she did not have any money for that. Even she refused firmly, when the conductor offered her a cold drink free of charge. This tells us that she was a wise girl and had a self control on her feelings.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How did Valli plan her journey ?**

**Ans.** Valli was fascinated by the bus. She wanted to travel by bus for tour. She listened to people carefully, asked a few questions and collected information about the fare, the time taken by the bus and the timings. Now the major task was to save (collect) sixty paise which was a fortune for Valli. She checked her urge to buy sweets and toys and stifled her strong desire to ride the merry-go-round in the village fair. Thus, she saved the money. Her mother took her afternoon nap between one and four. So, she planned to take the one o'clock bus, she would reach the town at 1 : 45 and be back by about 2 : 45. It was careful and faultless planning.

**Q. 2. What interesting things and scenes did Valli see on her journey ?**

**Ans.** To Valli the travel was a new and exciting experience. She saw trees running towards the bus and then fading in the distances. She saw palm trees, mountains, the blue sky. She saw vast grasslands, a deep ditch and acres and acres of green field. She saw the train at the rail road crossing and the merchandise displayed in shops and lots of people. On her way to town. She saw a young cow, frightened by the bus and running helter-skelter and laughed. She enjoyed the return journey too but then she saw the same young cow dead. Some vehicle had struck and killed it. The scene made her sad and she did not look outside after that.

**Q. 3. Write a character sketch of Valli.**

**Ans.** Valli is an eight year old girl who is curious to know about things. She has no play mats of her own age its her sheet. She enjoys watching the things happening in her street. The bus arouses her curiosity about the town and the journey. The way she plans the journey and saves the money for fare tell us that she is intelligent determined and competent. She does not like others to make fun of her. She is self-dependent and does not accept help from others. Her power of observation is evident and her sadness of the death of the cow tells us, she is kind and caring. All in all, she is mature, intelligent, kind and competent.

**Q. 4. How did Valli plan her bus side ? What did she find out about the bus and how did she save up the fare ?** (M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Valli wanted to ride on the bus. So she planned that she would take the one o'clock afternoon bus, reach the town at one forty five, and will be back home by about two forty five. The fare of one side was thirty paise. After reaching the town she stayed in her seat and paid another thirty paise, she returned home by the same bus. She resisted her temptation to buy peppermints, toys, balloons etc. This way she saved sixty paise.

## 8. THE SERMON AT BENARAS

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *Gautama Buddha (563 Bc – 483 Bc) began life as a prince named Siddhartha Gautama, in Northern India. At twelve he was sent away for schooling in the Hindu sacred scriptures and four years later, he returned home to marry a princess. They had a son and lived for ten years as befitted royalty.*



### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. Who was Gautama Buddha ?

Ans. Gautama Buddha was a prince born in northern india.

Q. 2. When did Gautama Buddha marry ?

Ans. He married at the age of sixteen years.

Q. 3. From which lesson is the extract taken ?

Ans. The extract is taken from the lesson, 'The Sermon at Benaras'.

(2) *At about the age of twenty five the prince heretofore shielded from the sufferings of the world, while out hunting chanced upon a sick man then an aged man then a funeral and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights so moved him that he at once went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sermon he had witnessed.*

### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What did Gautama Buddha chance upon ?

Ans. He chanced upon a sick man, an old man, a funeral and finally a monk begging for alms.

Q. 2. Why did the sights affect him so greatly ?

Ans. The sights affected him so greatly because before that he was shielded from the sufferings of the world in his place as a prince.

Q. 3. Why did he go out into the world ?

Ans. He went out into the world to seek enlighten-ment (Knowledge) about the sorrows that he had seen.

(3) *Enlightened after seven days, he renamed the tree 'Bodhi tree' and began to teach and to share his new understandings. At that point he became known as Buddha.*

### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What did he do for seven days ?

Ans. He stayed under the peepal tree for seven days.

Q. 2. What name was given to the tree and to Gautama Buddha ?

Ans. Gautama Buddha named the tree Bodhi tree. After enlightenment he was known as Buddha.

(4) *The Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benaras, most holy of the dipping places on the river Ganges; that Sermon has been preserved and is given here. It reflects the Buddha's wisdom about one inscrutable kind of suffering.*

### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. Where did the Buddha preach his first sermon ?

Ans. Buddha preached his first sermon in Benaras.

Q. 2. What is Benaras ?

Ans. Benaras is one of the holiest dipping places on the river Gangas.

Q. 3. What does the Sermon reflect ?

Ans. It reflects Buddha's wisdom about one inscrutable kind of suffering, death.

(5) *At length Kisa Gotami met a man who replied to her request " I cannot give the medicine for the child but I know a physician who can "*

*And the girl said " pray tell me sir, who is it ? and man replied "*

*" Go to sakyamuni the Buddha. "*

### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What medicine did Kisa Gotami want for her child ?

Ans. Kisa Gotami's son had died and she was asking people for a medicine to bring him back to life.

Q. 2. What did the man tell her ?

Ans. The man told her to go to sakyamuni the Buddha.

(6) *Poor Kisa Gotami went from house to house and the people pitied her and said "Here is mustard seed, take it." But when she asked " Did a son or daughter, a father or mother, die in your family ? they answered " Alas the living are few, but the dead are many do not remind us of our deepest grief.*



**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. Why did Kisa Gotami go from house to house ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami went from house to house for a handful of mustard seed.

**Q. 2. Did Kisa Gotami get what she wanted ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami did not get what she wanted because Gautam Buddha had asked her to get a handful of mustard seed from a house where there had been no deaths.

**(7) The Buddha said, The life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and full of pain. For there is no any means by which, those, that have been born can avoid dying, after reaching old age, there is death, of such a nature are living-beings. As ripe fruits are early in danger of falling, so mortals when born are always in danger of death.**

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. According to Buddha, how is the life of mortals ?**

**Ans.** According to the Buddha the life of mortals is troubled, brief and full of pain.

**Q. 2. Can anyone who is born avoid dying ?**

**Ans.** No one, who is born, can avoid dying.

**Q. 3. With what does Buddha compare living beings.**

**Ans.** The Buddha compares the living beings with ripe fruits.

**(8) Not from weeping nor from grieving will anyone obtain peace of mind. on the contrary, his pain will be greeter and his body will suffer. He will make himself sick and pale, yet the dead are not saved by his lamentation. He who seeks peace should draw out the arrow of lamentation, and complaint and grief.**

**Questions with Answers**

**Q. 1. How can a person seek peace ?**

**Ans.** A person can seek peace only by drawing out the arrow of lamentation and complaint and grief. In other words they should try to come out of the grief.

**Q. 2. How do weeping and grieving for the dead affect a person ?**

**Ans.** The weeping and grieving well make the pain more acute and cause the body to suffer, The person will become sick and pale.

**Q. 3. Can lamentation save the dead ?**

**Ans.** Can lamentation cannot save the dead. It only gives more pain to the living.

**Short Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. When her son dies, Kisa Gotami goes from house to house ? What does she ask for ? Does she get it ? Why not ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami, in her sorrow, carried the dead child to all her neighbours asking them for medicine, she did not get it because there is no medicine that can bring back a dead child to life.

**Q. 2. Kisa Gotami again goes from house to house after she speaks with the Buddha. What does she ask for, the second time round ? Does she get it ? Why not ?**

**Ans.** Gautam Buddha asks Kisa Gotami to get handful of mustard seed from a house where death has never visited she doesn't get it because there is no house where death has not visited.

**Q. 3. What does Kisa Gotami understand the second time that she failed to understand the first time ? Was this what the Buddha wanted her to understand ?**

**Ans.** The second time Kisa Gotami understands that death is common to all and nobody can escape it. The Buddha wanted her to understand this bitter fact about life.

**Q. 4. Why do you think Kisa Gotami understood this only the second time ? In what way did the Buddha change her understanding ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami understood the reality of death only the second time because she personally found that there was no house where death had not visited the Buddha changed her understanding by a practical, personal experience.



**Q. 5. Why did Siddhartha Gautama abandon his luxurious life ? (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.** He abandoned his luxurious life because he had realized that his life of luxury is temporary, and that one day, he would grow old, fall sick and die. So he abandoned his life of luxury to seek for true or permanent happiness and he overcome death.

**Q. 6. How do you usually understand the idea of selfishness ? Do you agree with Kisa Gotami that she was being selfish in her grief ? (M.P. 2022)**

**Ans.** A person is selfish if he/she thinks only about his own profit or loss. Kisa Gotami was being selfish in the sense that she felt she alone had to bear the sorrow of her son's death and her sorrow was something unique. She found that death was universal phenomenon and everyone faced it.

**Q. 7. Describe the early life of Gautam Buddha.**

**Ans.** He was born in a royal family in Northern India. He was sent for schooling in Hindu sacred scriptures at the age of twelve. He returned after four year and was married to a princess. They got a son and he lived a happy married life till the age of twenty five.

**Q. 8. What event forced Siddhartha to leave his home and go in search of enlightenment.**

**Ans.** While hunting one day, when he was twenty five Siddhartha saw a sick man, an old man, a funeral procession and a monk begging for alms. He had led a shielded life so far and the suffering affected him in strongly that he decided to leave his home and go in search of enlightenment.

**Q. 9. Where did Siddhartha Gautama get enlightenment ? Why did he name the 'peepal' Bodhi tree ? (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.** Siddhartha Gautama got enlightenment under a 'Peepal' tree where he stayed for seven days. He named the 'peepal' tree 'Bodhi tree' or the tree of knowledge because he got enlightenment under it.

**Q. 10. Why did Kisa Gotami go to Buddha ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami's son had died and she was disconsolate. A man suggested her to go to Buddha, she requested the Buddha to revive her child.

**Q. 11. What did the Buddha ask Kisa Gotami to do ?**

**Ans.** The Buddha asked Kisa Gotami to get a handful of mustard seed from a house where there had been no deaths. Kisa Gotami went to bring the required mustard seed.

**Q. 12. What did the Buddha want Kisa Gotami to understand ?**

**Ans.** The Buddha wanted Kisa Gotami to understand that all men and women are mortal, Death is an undesirable fact of life Grieving cannot bring a dead person to life.

**Q. 13. How did Kisa Gotami realise that death is a universal truth ?**

**Ans.** Kisa Gotami went from house to house begging for the mustard seed. She could find no house where death had not visited. Thus, she realised that death is a universal truth.

**Q. 14. How can one obtain peace of mind ?**

**Ans.** According to the Buddha, one can get peace of mind if he removes lamentation, complaint and grief from his life. Who overcomes sorrow will have peace of mind and be blessed.

### **Long Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. Describe Sidhartha Gautama's journey from his princely life to becoming the Buddha ?**

**Ans.** Siddhartha Gautama began his life as a prince studied Hindu sacred scriptures and got married at the age of sixteen. They had a son and for ten years lived in princely comfort. Then while hunting he saw a sick man, then an aged man, a funeral procession and finally a monk begging for alms. He was so moved that he left his princely comforts and went out to seek enlightenment. He wandered for seven years. Then he sat under a peepal tree. He vowed that he would stay there until he got enlightenment. He got enlightenment after seven days, he renamed the tree Bodhi Tree (Tree of wisdom) and began teaching what he had acquired. He became known as the Buddha and gave his first sermon at Benaras.



**Q. 2. How did Kisa Gotami learn that death is a fact of life ?**

**Ans.** When Kisa Gotami's only son died she could not bear the sorrow. She went to her neighbours asking for medicine for the son. A man then her to go to sakyamuni, the Buddha. she went to Buddha and requested him to give her a medicine that would cure the boy.

Buddha asked her to bring a handful of mustard seed from a house where the death had not visited. Kisa Gotami went from house to house but every where she found that people had lost some or other dear one. There was no house, where death had not visited. Tired and disappointed, she sat down at the wayside, she understood that death was common to all. Only one who has given up selfishness can be immortal.

## 9. THE PROPOSAL

— Anton Chekov

### Extracts for Comprehension

(1) *We just get along somehow, my angel thanks to your prayers and so on. Sit down, please do... Now, you know, you shouldn't forget all about your neighbours, my darling. My dear fellow, why are you so formal in your get up! Evening dress, gloves and so on. Can you be going any where my treasure ?*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who is the speaker here ? To whom he is addressing ?**

**Ans.** The speaker is Chubukov. He is talking to Lomov, his neighbour.

**(ii) How is the person being addressed dressed ?**

**Ans.** The person, Lomov has come to propose Natalya, Chubukov's daughter. He wants to marry her.

(2) *Chubukov — "Oh! Don't go round and round it, darling ! spill it out ! Wew ?"*

*Lomov : One moment .....this very minute. The fact is I've come to ask the hand of your daughter Natalya, Stepanovna, in marriage.*

*Chubukov (joyfully) By Jone! Ivan Vassilevitch ! say it again : I didn't hear it all !"*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What did Lomov tell Chubukov ?**

**Ans.** Lomov told Chubukov that he had come to ask the hand of Natalya, in marriage.

**Q. 2. What was Chubukov's reaction to it ?**

**Ans.** Chubukov was very happy to hear Lomov ask his daughter's hand in marriage.

(3) *Lomov : If I give myself time to think, to hesitate, to talk a lot, to look for an ideal, or for real love, Then I'll never get married. Brr-it's cold. Natalya Stepanovna is an excellent housekeeper, not bad looking, well educated. What more do I want ? But I am getting a noise in my ears from excitement. [Drinks] And it's impossible for me not to marry. In the first place, I am already 35-a critical age, so to speak. In the second place, I ought to lead a quiet and regular life. I suffer from palpitations.*

#### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. What is Lomov's opinions about Natalya? Does he find her a suitable match for him ?**

**Ans.** Lomov thinks that Natalya is an excellent housekeeper, no bad looking and well educated. He thinks that she is a suitable match for him.

**Q. 2. Why does he think he should get married?**

**Ans.** Lomov thinks that he is 35-a critical age. He should lead a quiet and regular life. Also, he suffers from palpitations. So, he should get married.



Q. 3. In what case will he never get married ?

Ans. Lomov thinks that he will never get married if he thought too much, hesitated long, kept looking for an ideal match or for real love. So, Natalya seems to him to be the best option.

(4) Natalya : You must excuse my apron and negligee. We are shelling peas for drying. Why haven't you been here for such a long time ? Sit down..... Won't you have some-lunch ?

Lomov : No, thank you, I've had some already.

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What was Natalya wearing ?

Ans. She was wearing an apron and negligee.

Q. 2. What was she doing ?

Ans. She was shelling peas for drying.

Q. 3. How did she treat Lomov ?

Ans. She treated him nicely, like one neighbour should treat another.

(5) Lomov : "The Lomovs and the Chubukov have always had the most friendly, and I might almost say most affectionate regard for each other. And, as you know, my land is a near neighbour of yours. You will remember that my oxen Meadows touch your birchwoods,

Natalya : Excuse my interrupting you. You say, "My oxen Meadows." But are they yours ?

Lomov : Yes, mine.

Natalya : What are you talking about ? Oxen Meadows are ours. Not yours.

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. What is Oxen Meadows ?

Ans. Oxen Meadow is a piece of land belonging to Lomovs.

Q. 2. What does Natalya say about oxen Meadows ?

Ans. Natalya says that oxen Meadow is their property not Lomov's.

Q. 3. From which lesson is the extract taken ?

Ans. The extract is taken from the play "The Proposal".

(6) Lomov : No, you just think I'm a fool and want to have me on ! You call my land yours, and then you want me to talk to you calmly and politely ! Good neighbours don't behave like that, Stepan Stepanvich ! You are not a neighbour you are a grabber !"

#### Questions with Answers

Q. 1. Who is Lomov talking to ?

Ans. Lomov is talking to Chubukov.

Q. 2. Is Lomov's tone respectful and polite ? Why ?

Ans. No, he is angry because Chubukov claims that oxen Meadows belongs to them.

Q. 3. What is a grabber ? It is a respectful term?

Ans. A grabber is one who grabs or takes away something forcibly from its legal owner. It is an insulting term.

(7) Lomov : "Never mind about my people ! The Lomovs have all been honourable people, and not one has been tried for embezzlement, like your grand father!"

Chubukov : "You Lomovs have had lunacy in your family, all of you!"

Natalya : All, all, all.

Chubukov : Your grandfather was a drunkard and your younger aunt, Natasya, Mihailovna, ran away with an architect and so on.....

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who was tried for embezzlement ?**

**Ans.** Chubukov's grand father, was tried for embezzlement, according to Lomov.

**Q. 2. What did Lomov's younger aunt do ? Was it a good thing to do ?**

**Ans.** She ran away with an architect. It was an dishonourable act.

**Q. 3. Was this quarrelling necessary ? Why had Lomov come there ?**

**Ans.** The quarrelling was quite unnecessary. Lomov had come there with the honourable intentions of marrying Natalya.

**(8) Chubukov :** *And that blind hen, Yes, that turnip ghost has the confounded cheek to make a proposal and so on ! What ? A proposal !*

**Natalya :** *What proposal ?*

**Chubukov :** *"Why, he came here to propose you.*

**Natalya :** *To propose ? To me ? Why didn't you tell me so before ?*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Who is called a blind hen, a turnip ghost and a confounded cheek ?**

**Ans.** Chubukov calls Lomov a blind hen, a turnip ghost and a counfounded cheek.

**Q. 2. Was Natalya angry or happy to hear that Lomov had come to propose her ?**

**Ans.** Natalya was very happy to hear that Lomov had come to propose to her.

**(9) Lomov :** *I see stars ..... mist..... where am I ?*

**Chubukov :** *"Hurry up and get married and well, to the devil with you ! She's is willing! (He puts Lomov's hand into his daughter's) She's willing and all that. I give you my blessing and so on. Only leave me in peace !*

**Lomov :** *"Eh ! What ? To whom ?"*

**Chubukov :** *"She's willing, well ? Kiss and be damned to you !"*

**Natalya :** *"He's alive..... Yes, Yes, I am willing.*

**Chubukov :** *"Kiss each other !"*

### Questions with Answers

**Q. 1. Why does Lomov see stars and mist ?**

**Ans.** Lomov says he sees stars and mist because he had become unconscious. he doesn't remember where he is.

**Q. 2. What does Chubukov say ?**

**Ans.** Chubukov tells Lomov that she Natalya is ready to marry him. He also adds that he gives them his blessings.

**Q. 3. What does Chubukov ask for ?**

**Ans.** He asks Lomov and Natalya to leave him in peace.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Who is Lomov and why does he visit Chubukov ?**

**Ans.** Lomov is a young wealthy landowner and an unmarried man of thirty five. He was anxious to get married, as he had already reached a critical age. He visited Chubukov to ask for his daughter Natalaya's hand in marriage.

**Q. 2. Why does Chubukov suspect Lomov when he comes to his house ?**

**Ans.** Seeing Lomov dressed formally, Chubukov suspected that Lomov had come to borrow money. But he had decided that he would not lend any money to him.

**Q. 3. Why did Lomov go to the house of Chubukov ?**

**Ans.** Lomov went to the house of Chubukov to ask for his daughter. Natalaya's hand in marriage.



**Q. 4. What is the ailment that Lomov is suffering from ?**

**Ans.** Lomov is 35 years old and assumes it to be a high. He suffers from palpitation and sleep sickness. He wanted someone in his life who would take care of him.

**Q. 5. What does Lomov think when he is alone ?**

**Ans.** Lomov thinks that Natalya is an excellent housekeeper, not bad looking, well educated and would hence make a good wife.

**Q. 6. Neighbours must have a cordial relationship which Lomov and Natalya do not have. Describe/Explain.**

**Ans.** Neighbours must have a cordial relationship which Lomov and Natalya do not have. They fought quite a number of times because they start arguing about simple topics which slowly expand and become a reason of conflict for both of them.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a character sketch of Natalya.**

**Ans.** Lomov says, Natalya is a good housekeeper, not bad looking and well educated. These are the qualities that attract him to her and he comes to propose to her. But she is pompous and arrogant. As soon as Lomov claims to be the owner of 'Oxen Meadows' we see her changed character. She is not ready to listen to him and forgets all good manners. Again when her father tells her that Lomov had come to propose to her, her behaviour changes. She weeps and asks her father to bring Lomov back or she will die. This shows her weak character and selfishness. All in all, she is a character of contrasts.

**Q. 2. How does the marriage finally take place ?**

(M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Lomov comes with the intention of asking for Natalya's hand in marriage. Chubukov is glad and accepts the proposal. He sends Natalya to talk with Lomov. Lomov is hesitant and begins to talk about their lands adjacent to each other. They start on a debate about 'Oxen-Meadows' each claiming it to be their own. Chubukov also joins the debate and supports his daughter. They insult Lomov and send him back. Then Chubukov tells Natalya why Lomov had come. Natalya wants to marry Lomov. She asks her father to bring Lomov back but this time they start arguing about their dogs 'Guess' and 'Squeezer'. Lomov becomes unconscious and they fear he is dead. However, he recovers and Chubukov asks them to get married at once. He puts Lomov's hand into his daughter's hand and asks them to kiss each other. The marriage finally takes place.

**Q. 3. Write a character sketch of Chubukov.**

**Ans.** Chubukov is a land owner and father of Natalya. They are neighbours to Lomov. He is a practical man. When Lomov says that he needs his help, he suspects that he may ask for money and decides not to give him any money. He loves his daughter Natalya and is happy with Lomov's proposal for her. When Lomov and Natalya argue, he sides with Natalya and forgets about the proposal. So, we can say that he and Natalya are proud and rigid and don't try to understand the other person's point of view. In the last, however, he shows understanding and wisdom and asks them to marry before another debate starts. Thus, he is a practical man, a good father, rather abusive but wise.

**Q. 4. Write a character sketch of Lomov.**

**Ans.** Lomov is Chubukov's neighbour. He is a large and hearty fellow 35 years old. He goes to Chubukov's house with the intention of proposing to Natalya. Lomov is easily excited and in his excitement, can't behave normally. He tells of his intentions to Chubukov with hesitation. Again with Natalya he does not tell her directly but keeps on talking about other things. This shows, he is indecisive and nervous, and lacks confidence. He is weak hearted and given to palpitations, when excited his limbs go numb.

# MULTIPLE - CHOICE QUESTIONS FROM PROSE

## 1. A LETTER TO GOD

- Who read the letters sent by Lencho :
- (a) His wife (b) The postmaster (c) The God (d) His son.
- Who is the author of the lesson 'A letter to God' :
- (a) G. L. Fuentes (b) Anne Frank (c) Gavin Maxwell (d) Eleanor Estes.
- What did Lencho think of the post office employees :
- (a) Rude (b) Proud (c) Bunch of crooks (d) Unhelpful.
- How much money was arranged by the postmaster :
- (a) 100 pesos (b) 500 pesos (c) 70 pesos (d) 1000 pesos.
- How much money did Lencho want :
- (a) 100 pesos (b) 50 pesos (c) 10 pesos (d) 70 pesos.
- The field looked as if it were covered in :
- (a) Locusts (b) Salt (c) Sugar (d) Green
- Lencho had grown ..... in his fields :
- (a) Barley (b) Corn (c) Rice
- Where was Lencho's house situated :
- (a) In a city (b) In a forest (c) ..... (d) Top of a hill.
- Lencho compared the large raindrops to ..... :
- (a) New coins (b) Pearl (c) ..... (d) Stone.
1. What destroyed Lencho's crops :
- (a) Locusts (b) ..... (c) Leaves (d) Salt.
1. Lencho had faith in ..... :
- (a) Other farmers (b) The postmaster (c) The God (d) His family.
2. Why did he need money :
- (a) To help his family (b) To buy a tractor (c) To go to city (d) To herd cattle.
13. Lencho wrote a letter to ..... : (M.P. 2022)
- (a) His friend (b) God (c) The postmaster (d) His father.

## 2. NELSON MANDELA : LONG WALK TO FREEDOM

14. According to Nelson Mandela, what is courage :
- (a) Triumph over love (b) Triumph over fear  
(c) Triumph over poverty (d) Triumph over selfishness.
15. According to Nelson Mendela, what is a country's greatest wealth :
- (a) It's mineral (b) Its people (c) Its traditions (d) Its forests.
16. Which party did Mandela join :
- (a) National African party (b) Indian National congress  
(c) Universal party (d) African National Congress.
17. How many deputy presidents were elected :
- (a) Two (b) Three (c) One (d) None.
18. What change brought international leaders to South Africa :
- (a) Humanity (b) End of Apartheid  
(c) Peace (d) Trade.
19. Whom did Mandela want to thank :
- (a) His family (b) Military (c) Patriots (d) Rulers.



20. What does depths of oppression create :  
 (a) Poverty (b) Richness  
 (c) Heights of character (d) Freedom.
21. Aman who takes away freedom of another man is :  
 (a) Rude (b) A prisoner of hatred  
 (c) Criminal (d) Innocent.
22. According to Mandela, what comes naturally to heart : (M.P. 2023)  
 (a) Hatred (b) Love (c) Discrimination (d) Unity.
23. Which flame can never be extinguished :  
 (a) Man's love (b) Man's hatred (c) Man's goodness (d) None of these.
24. The spectacular array of South African jets was displayed by :  
 (a) Military (b) Crowd (c) Leaders (d) Villagers.
25. Nelson Mandela was accompanied by :  
 (a) His aunt (b) His daughter  
 (c) His mother-in-law (d) His sister.
26. Who was daughter of Nelson Mandela :  
 (a) Nancy (b) Maria (c) Zenani (d) Lucy.

### 3. TWO STORIES ABOUT FLYING

#### [I] His First Flight

27. Who has written the story 'His First Flight':  
 (a) Liam O' Flaherty (b) Anne Frank  
 (c) Frederick Forsyth (d) Nelson Mandela.
28. What was the seagull afraid of :  
 (a) Running (b) Flying (c) Swimming (d) None of these.
29. Why was the seagull exhausted :  
 (a) Due to running (b) Due to crying  
 (c) Due to strange exercise (d) None of these.
30. Who gave seagull a small piece of fish :  
 (a) Mother seagull (b) Father seagull (c) Brother seagull (d) None of these.
31. What food did the seagull's mother get for it :  
 (a) Insect (b) Crab (c) Prawn (d) Fish.
32. Why did mother seagull stop midway while giving fish :  
 (a) To push him to fly (b) She got tired  
 (c) She didn't want to give (d) None of these.
33. The sight of ..... maddened seagull.  
 (a) His brother's flying (b) His family enjoying  
 (c) Food (d) None of these.
34. What did his parents threaten him with :  
 (a) Never to talk with him (b) To punish him  
 (c) To starve him (d) None of these.
35. The lesson 'His first flight' is about :  
 (a) Pigeon (b) Pilot (c) Parrot (d) Seagull.
36. What were the seagull's siblings doing around him :  
 (a) Flying (b) Enjoying (c) Sleeping (d) Swimming.
37. What did the seagull pretend :  
 (a) Running fast (b) Falling asleep (c) Crying (d) Sleeping.

38. Nobody came near the seagull for :  
 (a) 10 hours (b) 12 hours  
 (c) 24 hours (d) 20 hours.
39. The young seagull had lack of :  
 (a) Courage (b) Fear  
 (c) Enthusiasm (d) Morality.
40. Who was alone on the ledge :  
 (a) Brother of seagull (b) Mother seagull  
 (c) Father seagull (d) Young seagull.
41. How many brothers did young seagull have :  
 (a) one (b) two (c) three (d) four. (M.P. 2022)
42. Who was with the young seagull on the ledge :  
 (a) his mother (b) his father (c) his brother (d) He was alone. (M.P. 2022)
- [II] Black Aeroplane**
43. Why was the aeroplane twisting in the air :  
 (a) Due to storm (b) Due to night  
 (c) Due to nightening (d) Due to rain.
44. Why did the pilot call Paris control :  
 (a) To know about air traffic (b) For landing  
 (c) For direction (d) For fuel.
45. The pilot was able to ..... anything.  
 (a) Speak (b) See (c) Hear (d) All of these.
46. Which instrument of plane stopped working first :  
 (a) Radio (b) Compass (c) Speedometer (d) Engine.
47. What risk did the pilot take :  
 (a) Flying into storm (b) Flying back to Paris  
 (c) Missing the breakfast (d) He took no risk.
48. Which control station did the pilot contact on his way back :  
 (a) London (b) Delhi (c) Paris (d) Munich.
49. The pilot was flying from ..... to .....  
 (a) England, Paris (b) France, England  
 (c) France, India (d) India, France.
50. Who is the author of 'The Black Aeroplane' :  
 (a) Gavin Maxwell (b) Anne Frank  
 (c) Frederick Forsyth (d) Eleanor Estes.
51. What looked like black mountains ?  
 (a) tall buildings (b) black hillock  
 (c) storm clouds (d) none of these.
52. How far was pilot from Paris when he saw black clouds ?  
 (a) 100 km (b) 150 km (c) 50 km (d) 200 km.
53. In which direction did he follow the black aeroplane ?  
 (a) North (b) East (c) West (d) South.
54. What was the name of the plane flown by the pilot ?  
 (a) Airbus (b) Dakota (c) Boeing (d) None.
55. The woman at the control tower confirmed that ..... :  
 (a) There was no other plane (b) There was no difficulty  
 (c) There was no signal (d) The radio was dead.
56. The woman in the control centre looked at the narrator ..... : (M.P. 2022)  
 (a) angrily (b) Strangely (c) happily (d) Joyfully.



#### 4. FROM THE DIARY OF ANNE FRANK

57. Which of these is Anne's long waited friend *Or* Anne's best friend was ..... :  
(M.P. 2022)  
(a) Her dog (b) Her cat (c) Her father (d) Her diary.
58. Which of these names did Anne give to her diary :  
(M.P. 2023)  
(a) Kitty (b) Bitty (c) Kitten (d) Mitten.
59. Which of these assigned Anne an essay on the subject 'A Chatterbox' :  
(a) Mr. Keesing (b) Miss Margot Frank  
(c) Mr. Otto Frank (d) Mrs. Kuperus.
60. Anne decided to write a diary because :  
(a) She had no close friend (b) She was a good writer  
(c) She loved to express her thoughts (d) She wanted to be different.
61. Which of these is true about Anne :  
(a) She was outspoken (b) She was careless  
(c) She was reserved (d) She was rude.
62. Mr. Keesing asked Anne to write an essay as :  
(a) Homework (b) A project  
(c) A punishment (d) It was for the school magazine.
63. Who was Mr. Keesing :  
(a) Her teacher (b) Her counselor (c) Her principal (d) Her relative.
64. Which of these best describes Mr. Keesing :  
(a) Jovial and creative (b) Strict and innovative  
(c) Tolerant and strict (d) Jovial and innovative.
65. Who was Margot Frank's birthday gift :  
(a) A diary (b) Her sister Anne Frank  
(c) New stationery (d) Her grandfather.

#### 5. GLIMPSES OF INDIA

##### [I] A Baker from Goa

66. What are the bakers known as in Goa ?  
(a) Pader (b) Portugese (c) Pekar (d) Baker.
67. What did the children long for ?  
(a) Loaves (b) Bread bangles (c) Banana bread (d) All of the above.
68. How many times did the baker come everyday :  
(a) Once (b) Twice (c) Thrice (d) Varies daily.
69. .... was called kabai.  
(a) Baker's dress (b) Baker's basket (c) Baker's bamboo (d) Baker's song.
70. Bread-making is popular in ..... :  
(M.P. 2022)  
(a) Mumbai (b) Delhi (c) Goa (d) Chennai.

##### [II] Coorg

71. Coorg is famous for ..... :  
(M.P. 2023)  
(a) Tea (b) Bread (c) Coffee (d) Green.
72. Where is Coorg situated :  
(a) Mysore (b) Chennai (c) Hyderabad (d) Cochin.
73. .... river obtains its water from Coorg :  
(a) Yamuna (b) Narmada (c) Kaveri (d) Tapti.
74. "The climb to the ..... hills brings you into a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg."  
(a) Brahmagiri (b) Himalayan (c) Nilgiri (d) Parvati.

75. What are the activities available in Coorg :  
 (a) River-rafting (b) Canocing  
 (c) Mountain biking (d) All of the above.
76. What is rappelling :  
 (a) Travelling in a river in a canoe  
 (b) Travelling in a river in a raft  
 (c) Going down a cliff by sliding down a rope  
 (d) None of the above.

### [III] Tea from Assam

77. What is Assam popularly known as :  
 (a) Tea country (b) Coffee country  
 (c) Green country (d) Plantation country.
78. In Europe, tea was drunk as more of a ..... than ..... :  
 (a) Medicine, beverage (b) Beverage, medicine  
 (c) Sleep waver, medicine (d) Sleep banisher, medicine.
79. What was Dhckiabari  
 (a) Name of a station  
 (b) Tea garden managed by Pranjol's father  
 (c) Tea garden managed by Rajvir's father  
 (d) Name of a hill.
80. Where did Rajvir and Pranjol study :  
 (a) Assam (b) Coorg (c) Goa (d) Delhi.

### 6. MIJBIL : THE OTTER

81. What group of animals does otters belongs to :  
 (a) Elk (b) Hedgehogs (c) Mousselines (d) By his friend.
82. Who is the author of "Mijbil the Otter" :  
 (a) Gavin Maxwell (b) Roald Dahl  
 (c) Paulo Coehlo (d) Arup Kumar Dutta.
83. What were Mij's favourite toys :  
 (a) Toy car (b) Marbles (c) Soil (d) None of these.
84. How did the otter spend most of his time :  
 (a) New year of 1955 (b) New year of 1956  
 (c) New year of 1957 (d) New year of 1958.
85. What did the otter look like :  
 (a) Small dog (b) Small dragon (c) Small cat (d) Small Rabbit.
86. What had trickled out of the box :  
 (a) Juice (b) Blood (c) Water (d) Paint.
87. What did the woman in the aeroplane think that the otter was :  
 (a) A dog (b) An Otter (c) A rat (d) A seal.
88. What was the name given to the Otter : (M.P. 2023)  
 (a) Major (b) Mijbil (c) Mad (d) Majhis
89. Where did the Arabs keep the Otter :  
 (a) In a box (b) In a bag (c) In a sack (d) In the pocket.
90. What kept Mij engaged when they shifted to London :  
 (a) Ping Pong game (b) The children (c) The author (d) All of these.



91. What do you mean by "Compulsive habits" :  
 (a) Destructive habits (b) Good habits  
 (c) Additive habits (d) Habits impossible to control.
92. What did Mij do to the box :  
 (a) Made in wet (b) Tore the lining of the box  
 (c) Overturned it (d) All of these.
93. What is the meaning of "an appalling spectacle" :  
 (a) A safe space (b) A funny scene  
 (c) A mysterious situation (d) A shocking scene.
94. The pieces of the moon can be seen in the crown of which tree :  
 (a) Apple tree (b) Hemlock tree (c) Oak tree (d) Walnut tree.

### 8. THE SERMON AT BENARES

95. Gautama Buddha's early name was ..... :  
 (a) Sidhha (b) Sadhu (c) Siddhartha (d) Sidhanth.
96. What moved Siddhartha to seek out enlightenment :  
 (a) A sick man (b) An aged man  
 (c) A monk begging (d) All of the above.
97. Where did Siddhartha vow to stay until his enlightenment came :  
 (a) His palace (b) Under peepal tree  
 (c) Under banyan tree (d) Under a tree.
98. What did he name the tree :  
 (a) Bodhi tree (b) Buddha tree  
 (c) Gautama tree (d) Siddhartha tree.
99. Which seed did Buddha ask Kisa to bring :  
 (a) Pumpkin seeds (b) Mustard seeds  
 (c) Sunflower seeds (d) Sesame seeds.
100. What did the flickering lights make Kisa realise :  
 (a) She is being selfish (b) Death is common to all  
 (c) Men are mortals (d) All of the above.
101. What did Buddha tell Kisa about life :  
 (a) It is troubled (b) It is brief  
 (c) Combined with pain (d) All of the above.
102. Both young and adults, fools and wise fall into the power of ..... :  
 (a) Life (b) Death (c) Food (d) All of the above.
103. In which city did Buddha deliver his first sermon :  
 (a) Patna (b) Benaras (c) Lumbini (d) Gaya.
- Ans.** 1. (b), 2. (a), 3. (c), 4. (c), 5. (a), 6. (b), 7. (b), 8. (d), 9. (a), 10. (b), 11. (c), 12. (a),  
 13. (b), 14. (b), 15. (b), 16. (d), 17. (a), 18. (b), 19. (c), 20. (c), 21. (b), 22. (b),  
 23. (c), 24. (a), 25. (b), 26. (c), 27. (a), 28. (b), 29. (c), 30. (a), 31. (d), 32. (a), 33. (c),  
 34. (c), 35. (d), 36. (a), 37. (b), 38. (c), 39. (a), 40. (d), 41. (b), 42. (d), 43. (a),  
 44. (c), 45. (b), 46. (b), 47. (a), 48. (c), 49. (b), 50. (c), 51. (c), 52. (b), 53. (a),  
 54. (b), 55. (a), 56. (b), 57. (d), 58. (a), 59. (a), 60. (a), 61. (a), 62. (c), 63. (a),  
 64. (b), 65. (b), 66. (a), 67. (d), 68. (b), 69. (a), 70. (c), 71. (c), 72. (a), 73. (c),  
 74. (a), 75. (d), 76. (c), 77. (a), 78. (a), 79. (a), 80. (d), 81. (c), 82. (a), 83. (b),  
 84. (b), 85. (b), 86. (b), 87. (c), 88. (b), 89. (c), 90. (a), 91. (d), 92. (b), 93. (d),  
 94. (c), 95. (c), 96. (d), 97. (b), 98. (a), 99. (b), 100. (d), 101. (d), 102. (b), 103. (b)

## [B] POETRY SECTION

### 1. DUST OF SNOW

— Robert Frost

#### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *The way a crow  
Shook-down on me  
The dust of snow  
From a hemlock tree.*

**Explanation :** It is a day of winter. The poet is standing under a hemlock tree. A crow comes to perch on the tree. A dust (fine-particles) of snow fall on the poet.

**Q. 1. Name the poet of the poem.**

**Ans.** The poet of the poem is Robert Frost.

**Q. 2. What did the crow do ?**

**Ans.** The crow perched on the hemlock tree. Small particles of snow fell on the poet.

**Q. 3. Where was the poet standing ?**

**Ans.** The poet was standing under a hemlock tree.

2. *Has given my heart ....*

*A change of mood  
And saved some part  
of a day I had rued.....*

**Explanation :** The dust of snow falls on the poet and brings a change of mood in him. His sense of regret is replaced by cheerfulness. Thus, the poet feels that the remaining part of the day is not wasted in a gloomy mood.

**Q. 1. What gave the poet a change of mood ?**

**Ans.** Falling dust of snow gave the poet a change of mood.

**Q. 2. What did the crow do ? What was the result ?**

**Ans.** The crow perched on the tree. It caused snow-flakes to fall on the poet.

**Q. 3. How did the snow-flakes affect the poet ?**

**Ans.** The falling of the snow flakes removed the poet's gloomy thoughts and made him happy.

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What is a 'dust of snow' ? What does the poet say has changed his mood ?**

**How has the poet's mood changed ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** A 'dust of snow' are fine particles of snow. The small incident of the crow sitting on the tree causes the dust of snow to fall on the poet. This changes his mood. He forgets his sorrow and becomes happy.

**Q. 2. How does Frost present nature in this poem. The following questions may help you the think of an answer.**

(i) **What are the birds that are usually named in poems ? Do you think a crow is often mentioned in the poem ? What images come to your mind when you think of a crow ?**



(ii) Again, what is 'hemlock tree'? Why doesn't the poet write about a more 'beautiful tree' such as a maple, or an oak, or a pine?

(iii) What do the 'crow' and the 'hemlock' represent-joy or sorrow? What does the dust of snow that the crow shakes off a hemlock tree stand for?

Ans. (i) Poets generally mention beautiful birds like peacocks and parrots, the cuckoo, nightingales, swallows, mynahs. A crow is black and has an unpleasant sound. It is hardly ever mentioned in poems.

(ii) A hemlock tree is a poisonous plant with small white flowers. All parts of the plant are toxic. The poet has chosen the crow and 'the hemlock tree' which suit the content and the message of the poem.

(iii) The 'crow' and the 'hemlock' represent sorrow. The dust of snow flakes contrasts with the sorrowful mood of the poet and acts as a catalyst to lift his spirits up.

Q. 3. Have there been times when you felt depressed or hopeless? Have you experienced a similar moment that changed your mood that day?

Ans. Everybody passes through periods of depression and helplessness and I have also faced such situations. Once I had a quarrel with my elder sister. She was very unhappy. I went to the nearby garden. I saw small children playing. Their joy, slowly, changed my mood and I returned in a better mood.

Q. 4. Where was the poet? What happened?

Ans. The poet was under a hemlock tree in a sad mood. It had been snowing and it was very cold. A crow came and caused snow-dust to fall on the poet. This changed the poet's mood to happy.

Q. 5. What message is the poet trying to convey through the poem, "Dust of Snow"?

Ans. The poet is trying to convey that nature's objects always can teach us something. Snow is not beautiful, 'hemlock-tree' is poisonous, but these two examples help the poet to come out of his gloom. Again, it says that every creation of God has purpose.

Q. 6. How is the poem 'Dust of Snow' different from other nature poems?

Ans. Poet like Wordsworth, Shelly and Keats have written poem of different objects of nature, like birds, seasons and natural phenomena. The poem 'Dust of Snow' is different because it mentions the ugly crow and the harmful 'hemlock tree'. It tells us how an insignificant event changes his mood.

### Long Answer Type Question

Q. 1. Write a summary of the poem and the message it conveys.

Ans. The poem 'Dust of Snow' by Robert Frost describes the poet's experience on a cold winter day. He stood under a hemlock tree. He was in a depressed mood. Suddenly a crow came and perched on the hemlock tree. This action caused the dust of snow to fall on the poet. The small act lifted the poet's mood. His depression went away. The message of the poem is that nature's company always brings joy to us. Also, the two objects, the crow and the hemlock tree which the poet has used are not really beautiful and not poet's favoured choices. Here they play an important role which gives the message that no object of nature is without some use or purpose.



@mpbsePDF

## 2. FIRE AND ICE

— Robert Frost

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *Some say the world will end in fire*

*Some-Say-in-ice*

*From what I've tasted of desire*

*I hold with ... who favour fire.*

**Explanation :** People have two views about the end of the Earth. There are people who think that the Earth will come to an end because of fire of desire, anger and greed. Then, there are others who opine that the ice will cause the end of the Earth. Here 'ice'-means hatred and intolerance. This poet has some experience of 'desire' and feels that the end of the earth will come from fire.

**Q. 1. The poem is written by (Choose the correct answer)**

- (a) W. Wordsworth (b) R.N. Tagore  
(c) Robert Frost (d) W. Whitman.

**Ans. (c).**

**Q. 2. What views do people have to Earth's destruction ?**

**Ans.** People have two opinions. Some think it will end in fire. Others think that 'ice' will destroy it.

**Q. 3. The word fire represents.**

**Ans.** The word fire represents desire, greed and anger.

2. *But if it had to perish twice*

*I think I know enough of hate*

*To say that for destruction ice*

*Is also great*

*Also would suffice.*

**Explanation :** The poet says that if the world had to perish a second time, it will be due to ice. The poet feels that there is a lot of hatred in the world and it can also destroy the world. The ice is the ice of long-lasting hatred, jealousy and ill-will.

**Q. 1. The word 'it' in the first line refers to :**

- (a) The poet (b) The earth  
(c) Fire (d) Ice.

**Ans. (b).**

**Q. 2. If the world is destroyed a second time, what will cause it ?**

**Ans.** If the world is destroyed a second time, its cause will be the ice of hatred.

**Q. 3. What does 'ice' stand for in the poem ?**

**Ans.** Ice is the poem stands for the feeling of hatred and jealousy.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. There are some ideas about how the world will end. Do you think the world will end some day ? Have you ever thought what would happen if the sun got so hot that it burst or grew colder and colder ?**

**Ans.** It is quite possible that the world may end someday. There is a lot of concern about global warming which is affecting the health of the earth. The life on Earth is possible only because of the sun. It gives rise to seasons, brings rains etc. So, if it suddenly becomes too hot or too cold, many species may die.

**Q. 2. In the reference of the poem, "Fire and Ice", how will the world end ? (M.P. 2023)**

**Ans.** According to the poet, the world will end due to 'fire' which symbolises desire. But if the world had to end twice then it will be end due to the hatred symbolised by 'ice'.



**Q. 3.** For frost what do 'ice' and 'fire' stand for? Here are some ideas. greed, avarice, cruelty, lust, conflict, fury, intolerance, rigidity, insensitivity, coldness, indifference, hatred.

**Ans.**

| Fire   | Ice  |
|--|--|
| cruelty, fury, lust, greed, avarice, lust, intolerance | insensitivity, rigidity, coldness, indifference, hatred. |

**Q. 4.** What is the rhyme scheme of the poem? How does it help in bringing out the contrasting ideas in the poem?

The rhyme scheme of the poem is :

a b a a b c b c b.

**Ans.** The rhyme scheme separates the contrasting ideas. The two ideas of 'fire' and 'ice' have different rhyme schemes in the two stanzas.

**Q. 5.** Will the world come to an end? What does the poet say?

**Ans.** The world will come to an end, it is sure. The poet says that there can be two causes or factors that will bring the world to an end. They are, the fire of desire and the ice of cold hatred. Both of them are powerful destroyers.

**Q. 6.** What will be the cause of the end of the world if it had to perish twice?

**Ans.** The first cause of the end of the world, according to the poet is 'fire' of uncontrolled desires. If the world had to perish twice, it will be perished by the ice of hatred. Both fire and ice are strong destroyers. We see that hatred among nations and people is increasing and it does create dangers of war and destruction.

**Q. 7.** What are the two negative powers that can destroy the world?

**Ans.** The two negative powers are uncontrolled desire and hatred. The poet has compared them to fire and ice.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1.** What is the message of the poem?

**Ans.** The poem points out two major causes that can destroy the world. We are aware of physical factors like global warming, change in cycle of seasons etc. They do affect the human life. Also there are emotional factor, uncontrolled desires and greed create tensions among nations. They give rise to wars, we have faced the tragedy of World-Wars in 20<sup>th</sup> century. Also there is a lot of hatred. There are racial and religious difference that cause animosity. The poet warns us against these evils.

## 3. A TIGER IN THE ZOO

— Leslie Norris

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *He stalks in his vivid stripes*

*The few steps of his cage*

*On pads of velvet quiet*

*In his quiet rage.*

**Explanation :** The stanza describes a tiger with his stripes in a zoo. He moves about in his cage. The cage is small and he can take only a few steps. He moves silently because of his soft velvety claws. He is angry but helpless.

**Q. 1. Who is 'he' ?**

**Ans.** 'He' is a tiger in the zoo.

**Q. 2. What are 'pads' ?**

**Ans.** 'Pads' are the velvet soft paws of the tiger.

**Q. 3. From which poem is the extract taken ?**

**Ans.** The extract is taken from the poem 'A Tiger in the Zoo'.

**2. He should be lurking in shadow**

*Sliding through long grass*

*Near the water hole*

*Where plump deer pass.*

**Explanation :** The stanza describes the tiger in a forest. In the forest it may be seen hiding in the shadow or moving stealthily through long grass. We may find him near a water hole waiting for plump deer to drink. Thus, the stanza is a contrast to the tiger in the Zoo.

**Q. 1. Why does the tiger hide in the shadow ?**

**Ans.** The tiger hides in the shadow to be able to hunt for his food.

**Q. 2. Where can he find the plump deer ?**

**Ans.** He can find the plump deer near the water hole where they come to quench their thirst.

**Q. 3. The meaning of the work 'lurking' is ....**

**Ans.** 'Waiting without movement to attack his prey'.

**3. He should be snarling around houses**

*At the jungle's edge*

*Baring his white fangs, his claws*

*Terrorizing the village.*

**Explanation :** This stanza describes the strength and power of the tiger in a free state. If he reaches a village at the jungle's edge, he may be seen snarling around the houses. He bares his sharp teeth and shows his claws. Its presence in or near the village fills the people with fear. Thus the stanza describes the power and terror of a tiger in the open.

**Q. 1. What creates terror among the villagers ?**

**Ans.** The growling of the tiger wandering about the village creates terror among the villagers.

**Q. 2. What are the tiger's weapons ?**

**Ans.** His weapons are his fangs and his claws.

**Q. 3. Which village is a tiger likely to visit ?**

**Ans.** A tiger is likely to visit a village at the forest's edge.

**4. But he's locked in a concrete cell**

*His strength behind bars,*

*Stalking the length of his cage.*

*Ignoring visitors.*

**Explanation :** Here, the poet brings us back to the reality of the tiger's caged state. He is kept in a concrete cell. The strong bars of the cage act as a restraint to him. The only thing he can do is move about in his enclosure, paying no attention to the visitors.

**Q. 1. What does the tiger do in the cell ?**

**Ans.** He keeps on moving in despair, his strength bound by the walls of the cell.

**Q. 2. How does he react to the visitors ?**

**Ans.** The tiger ignores the visitors. They do not excite or attract him.



**Q. 3. Why has the tiger lost his natural strength ?**

**Ans.** The tiger has lost his natural strength because he has lost his freedom.

**5. He hears the last voice at night**

*The patrolling cars*

*And stares with his brilliant eyes.*

*At the brilliant stars.*

**Explanation :** The day and night lose their meaning to the caged tiger. The last sound that he hears at night is the patrolling cars. He looks at the brilliant stars in the sky with his brilliant eyes.

**Q. 1. What is the last voice the tiger hears ?**

**Ans.** The last voice the tiger hears is the sound made by patrolling cars.

**Q. 2. The eyes of the tiger are compared ..... (Complete the sentence)**

**Ans.** To the brilliant stars in the sky.

**Q. 3. At night the tiger listens to ..... (Choose the correct option)**

- (a) The people talking                      (b) The trains  
(c) Patrolling cars                          (d) Vehicles.

**Ans.** (c).

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How does the tiger move about in the cage?**

**Ans.** The tiger is in a concrete cell. There is not much space. The tiger keeps on moving silently from one end to another and back. He suffers a quiet rage and moves on his velvet claws noiselessly.

**Q. 2. How does the tiger terrorize the villagers? Does he intend to attack them ?**

**Ans.** Sometimes a tiger wanders about a village near the forest. He snarls around the houses showing his fangs and long claws. He does not intend to attack them because 'man' is not his natural prey. He attacks a person only when provoked.

**Q. 3. What is the message of the poem ?**

**Ans.** The message of the poem is that the animals in the zoo are not happy. They deserve to be free, roaming about in their natural habitat and we human beings have no right to deny them this. Also, even in zoos they should have more space and freedom.

**Q. 4. How does the tiger behave in his natural surrounding ?**

**Ans.** A tiger is the king of the forest. He roams about freely. He waits for his prey larking in the shadow. He slides through long grass noiselessly. He waits at the water hole for his favourite prey the deer. He can create terror among the villagers when he moves about in a village on the edge of the forest. He growls and opens out his fang and claws.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Read the following two poems : One about a tiger and the other about a panther. Then discuss :**

**Are Zoos necessary for the protection or conservation of same species of animals ? Are they useful for educating the public ? Are there alternatives to Zoos ?**

**Ans.** Zoos are necessary for the protection and conservation of same species of animals classified as endangered species. In the zoos they can be safe and even their number may increase. Their natural habitat is shrinking due to increasing human population.

Zoos are also useful in educating people about animals which are too few in number to be seen in a forest. We can learn about their habits, their beauty and their importance in the ecology. Reserved forests and national parks are better because they allow these animals more freedom and better life.

**Q. 2.** Take a point of view for or against the zoos or even consider both points of view and write a couple of paragraphs (or speak about the topic) for a couple of minutes in the class.

**Ans.** About a century ago, we had dense forests which provided a natural habitat to animals. The forests had an ecology of their own. As the human population increased we needed more and more land for cultivation, housing, road, factories and mining. Thus it is the man, who has encroached the natural habitation of wild animals. That's why we read news of a group of elephants destroying the crops and houses of villagers in Chhattisgarh and other states. The animals today are facing the challenge to survival. Many common species have become endangered and some have gone to extinction.

God has created all these species with a specific purpose. They all play their part in the ecology of the world. If we want to preserve them for the next generation, zoos are a useful alternative. It has proved a success in the case of tigers and we have now a healthy population of these magnificent animals. Zoos, reserve forest and national parks all have a role to play in this task.

## 4. HOW TO TELL WILD ANIMALS

— Carolyn Wells

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *If ever you should go by chance  
To jungle in the east,  
And if there should to you advance  
A large and tawny beast,  
If he roars at you as you're dying  
You'll know it is the Asian Lion.*

**Explanation :** The poet says that if you happen to go the East, you may see a large animal with brownish yellow skin. If it roars strongly, you might die of fear.

Then you will know that the animal is an Asian Lion.

**Q. 1.** Where can one see the Asian Lion ?

**Ans.** One can see the Asian lion in a forest in the East.

**Q. 2.** What colour is the Asiatic Lion's skin ?

**Ans.** It is brownish yellow.

**Q. 3.** From which poem is the extract taken ?

**Ans.** The extract is from the poem : "How to Recognize Wild Animals".

2. *Or if sometime when roaming round  
A noble wild beast greets you  
With black stripes on a yellow ground  
Just notice if he eats you.  
This simple rule may help you learn  
The Bengal Tiger to discern.*

**Explanation :** While roaming in the forest you come across an animal which impresses you by its size. The animal has also black stripes on his yellow skin. If he attacks and eats you, it is surely that is the Bengal Tiger.



**Q. 1. Who is the poet of this poem ?**

**Ans.** The poet of the poem is Carolyn Wells.

**Q. 2. How is the Bengal Tiger different from an Asian Lion ?**

**Ans.** The Bengal Tiger has black stripes on his yellow skin while the skin of the Asiatic Lion is tawny in colour.

**Q. 3. What is the 'noble wild beast' ?**

**Ans.** The noble wild beast is the Bengal Lion.

**3. If strolling forth, a beast you view,**

*Whose hide with spots is peppered*

*As soon as he has leapt on you*

*You'll know it is the leopard.*

*It will do no good to rear with pain.*

*He'll only-leap and leap again.*

**Explanation :** While walking in the jungle you may see a beast that has black spots on its body. As soon as the animal sees you, it will jump at you, crying in pain will be little use because he will leap and leap upon you. Then animal is a Leopard.

**Q. 1. What is special about the Leopard's skin?**

**Ans.** The Leopard's skin has black spot on it.

**Q. 2. Is crying good before a Leopard ?**

**Ans.** No, crying is useless before a leopard. He just keeps on leaping upon its prey.

**Q. 3. How is a Leopard different from a Bengal Tiger ?**

**Ans.** A Bengal Tiger has stripes while a leopard has black spots. The Bengal Tiger is bigger in size than the Leopard.

**4. If when you are walking round your yard**

*You meet a creature there,*

*Who hugs you very very hard,*

*Be sure it is a bear.*

*If you have any doubts, I guess*

*He'll give you one more caress .*

**Explanation :** You may meet a bear while walking around your yard. The animal will hug you tight. The hug may kill you but will know that it is a bear.

**Q. 1. What will a bear do if you chance to see one ?**

**Ans.** The bear will hug the person so tightly that he may die.

**Q. 2. Where can one see a bear ?**

**Ans.** One can see a bear while walking around one's yard.

**Q. 3. Choose the correct answer :**

**The animal that may kill one by hugging is :**

(a) A Bengal Tiger (b) An Asian Lion

(c) A hyena (d) A bear.

**Ans.** (d).

**5. Though to distinguish beasts of prey**

*A novice might nonplus,*

*The Crocodile you always may*

*Tell from the Hyena thus;*

*Hyenas come with merry smiles*

*But if they weep they're crocodiles.*

**Explanation :** The poet says that a novice may find it difficult to distinguish between wild animals. He then tells that we can tell a hyena from crocodile very easily because a hyena is always smiling while a crocodile weeps (while eating their prey).

**Q. 1. Which two animals are mentioned in the stanza ?**

**Ans.** The two animals mentioned in the stanza are the hyena and the crocodile.

**Q. 2. What is a 'novice' ?**

**Ans.** A novice is person without much experience.

**Q. 3. How are the two animals different ?**

**Ans.** The two animals are different because the hyena is always smiling while the crocodile is weeping.

**6. The true Chameleon is small,**

*A lizard sort of thing;*

*He hasn't any ears at all,*

*And not a single wing,*

*If there is nothing on the tree,*

*It is the chameleon you see.*

**Explanation :** The chameleon is a small creature similar to a lizard, he has neither ears nor wings. If you see a single creature sitting on tree it definitely is the chameleon.

**Q. 1. How can we recognize a chameleon ?**

**Ans.** We can recognize him easily because it has no ears and no wings and looks like a lizard.

**Q. 2. Is the chameleon as dangerous as other animals in the poem ?**

**Ans.** No, it is harmless compared to other animals like the Lion, hyena or the crocodile.

**Q. 3. Where can one see a chameleon ?**

**Ans.** It can be seen on the tree.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What distinctive feature of the Asian Lion does the poem describe ?**

**Ans.** Asiatic Lion is a large, beast of brownish colour. His roar creates terror in the people's hearts. He is found in the Asian countries.

**Q. 2. How can we identify the Bengal Tiger ?**

**Ans.** We can identify the Bengal Tiger by the black stripes on its yellow skin. He is a large animal and rightly called the king of the forest. His fangs and claws exhibit his power and create terror..

**Q. 3. How does the leopard behave when he sees someone ?**

**Ans.** A leopard has black spots on his yellow skin when he sees someone (a prey) it leaps over it. He keeps on leaping on the body of the victim. He is powerful and terrifying.

**Q. 4. How does the poems describe the 'chameleon'.**

**Ans.** The poet says that a chameleon has no ears and no wings. It is a small animal like a lizard, we may see him sitting alone on a tree.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How does the poet suggest that you identify the lion and the tiger ? Whom can you do so according to him ?**

**Ans.** The poet suggests that we may identify the lion by his large brownish body and its roar. The tiger has distinct stripes on his yellow body. We can identify them when they attack us and it is a dangerous way to identify them.



**Q. 2. What is the difference between the hyena and the crocodile ?**

**Ans.** We know that the crocodile lives in or around water and the hyena lives in the forest but the poet tells us their main difference. It is that a hyena attacks his prey smiling but a crocodile sheds tears as it eats its prey.

**Q. 3. How can a bear's hug confuse a novice ?**

**Ans.** A novice may think of the bearhug as a sign of affection but the hug is really the way a bear attacks his victim. He hugs so tightly that the victim is badly injured or killed.

## 5. THE BALL POEM

— John Berryman

### Extracts for Comprehension

(M.P. 2022)

1. *What is the boy now, who has lost his balls  
What, what is he to do ? I saw it go  
Merrily bouncing, down the street and then  
Merrily over- there it is the water !  
No use to say there are other balls.*

**Explanation :** The poet looks at the boy who has lost his ball. He wants to know about his reaction at the loss. The poet himself saw the ball rolling over and falling into the sea. The poet knows that the loss of the ball is a shock to the boy and even saying that he can get another ball will not make him happy.

**Q. 1. From which poem is the extract taken ?**

**Ans.** The extract is from the poem, "The Ball poem".

**Q. 2. What happened to the ball ?**

**Ans.** It fell from the hands of the boy, rolled and fell into water.

**Q. 3. Can the boy get it back ?**

**Ans.** No, the boy cannot get it back.

4. **What has happened to the boy :**

(M.P. 2022)

- (a) The boy was amusing (b) The boy was happy  
(c) The boy was sad (d) The boy was cheerful.

5. **Which word means the same as "merrily" :**

(M.P. 2022)

- (a) Cheerlessly (b) Unhappily  
(c) Jovially (d) Miserably.

6. **The boy has lost his ball, it is in the ..... :**

(M.P. 2022)

- (a) Market (b) Garden (c) House (d) Water.

**Ans.** 4. (c), 5. (c), 6. (d).

2. *An ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy  
As he stands rigid, trembling, staring down  
All his young days into the harbour where  
His, ball went. I would not intrude on him  
A dime another ball is worthless.*

**Explanation :** The boy who has lost the ball stands without moving. He is shaking with grief. He stares at the water in the harbour where his ball has gone. The ball is the memory of his happy days and with the ball those good days are gone. The poet does not want to disturb him. To say that a dime would buy him another ball is of no use.

Q. 1. What does he stare at ?

Ans. He stares down into the harbour where his ball has gone.

Q. 2. How does the boy feel ?

Ans. The boy is in grief. The ball meant a lot to him.

Q. 3. Why does the poet not offer him a dime ?

Ans. The poet does not offer him a dime to buy another ball because it will not reduce his sense of loss.

3. *He senses first responsibility.*

*In a world of possessions. People will take*

*Balls, balls will be lost always little boy.*

Explanation : The loss of the ball to the boy means that he has lost something of his own. He realizes that he must learn to accept the loss and live with it. This tells him that he must bear the loss. Other balls can be bought but the 'lost things' will never come back.

Q. 1. Who is the poet of this poem ?

Ans. The poet of this poem is John Berryman.

Q. 2. What happens to the boy when he loses the ball ?

Ans. The boy is confused.

Q. 3. Where did the ball go ?

Ans. It went into the water.

4. *And no one buys a ball back. Money is external.*

*He is learning, well behind his desperate eyes.*

*This epistemology of loss, how to stand up*

*Knowing what everyman must one day know.*

*And most know many days.*

*How to stand up.*

Explanation : The poet says that a 'lost ball' is lost forever. Money cannot buy the happiness that the ball symbolizes. The boy is learning about loss. He is also learning how to bear that loss. The loss may be the loss of a ball, a worldly possession or a friend we have to stand up and face. This is thus, knowing about loss.

Q. 1. Explain : 'Money is external'.

Ans. Here, it means that we do buy things with money but it is external and we cannot a cure for an emotional loss.

Q. 2. What does the boy learn from the loss of the ball ?

Ans. The boy learns to be able to bear the loss of possessions is a fact of life.

Q. 3. Epistemology means ..... (Choose the correct option) :

(a) Knowledge

(b) Knowledge of balls

(c) Knowledge about the nature of loss

(d) Knowledge of how balls go into water.

Ans. (c).

### Short Answer Type Questions

Q. 1. Why does the poet say, "I would not intrude on him ?" Why doesn't he offer him money to buy another ball ? (M.P. 2022)

Ans. The poet says he would not intrude on him because the boy is completely lost in his sorrow. With 'the ball' his memories are connected. The poet doesn't offer him money because another ball cannot compensate the loss of 'the ball'.



**Q. 2. What does 'in the world of possessions' means ?**

**Ans.** The world of possessions points to the materialistic view of life. In today's world 'possessions' have taken the front seat in our lives.

**Q. 3. What does the poet say the boy is learning from the loss of the ball ? Try to explain it in your own words.**

**Ans.** From the loss of the ball, the boy is learning his first lesson the knowledge of loss. He learns that it is not just the 'ball' there are lots of things one may lose. The incident is a lesson to him on how to bear losses in life.

**Q. 4. Have you ever lost something your linked very much ? Write a paragraphs describing how you felt then and saying whether and how you got over your loss.**

**Ans.** Yes, It was my bicycle. It was actually a gift from my father when I was in class 7, 9 lost my father the next year and the bicycle reminded me of him. I used it to go to my school. The loss was not so much material is it was emotional. I have not been able to get over the loss though my uncle bought a new bicycle for me.

**Q. 5. What is the message or central idea of the poem 'The Ball Poem' ?**

**Ans.** The poem conveys that 'loss' is a routine event in life. If we know about loss, it gives us the power (courage) to face the loss, we should learn about our responsibilities and to cope us with the loss. The poem also suggests that money can buy things but is poor substitute for loss.

**Q. 6. Where has the boy lost his ball ? How does the loss affect him ?**

**Or**

**What is the child's reaction on losing the ball?**

**Ans.** The boy lost his ball while playing near the harbour. It possibly slipped from his hands and went rolling into the water. The boy stood rigid. He shock in agony. He had his first experience of losing something dear to him.

**Q. 7. He, his first responsibility : What responsibility in referred here ?**

**Ans.** The responsibility referred to here is that of owning and keeping the ball safe. The child feels that he is responsible for keeping the ball safe. Its loss tells him about the responsibility and his failure to keep it.

**Q. 8. Does the lost ball stand for the metaphor of the boy's lost childhood ?**

**Ans.** Yes, the poet has used the lost ball as a metaphor for the boy's lost childhood. When we grow up we lose our childhood. Our world changes but the sense of loss of childhood is there. The poem points out to that loss for the boy.

### **Long Answer Type Question**

**Q. 1. Write the summary and central idea of the poem 'The Ball Poem'.**

**Ans.** The poem describes a day-to-day incident of a child losing his ball. It falls and rolls over into the water. The child has lost it forever. In a shock, he stands rigid. The poet uses the loss of the ball to symbolise possibly the loss of his young days, the joy of being a child. The poet does not disturb him. He knows that the offer to buy another ball will not make the child happy. The child is learning a lesson that in life we do lose possessions. We must learn to bear the loss. Another ball cannot replace the ball lost. Like every man he is learning what it means to lose things and also be able to face the pain of the loss.

## 6. AMANDA !

— Robin Klein

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *Don't bite your nails, Amanda !  
Don't hunch your shoulders Amanda !  
Stop that slouching and sit up straight.*

**Explanation :** In this stanza Amanda's mother is telling her to give up her bad manners such as biting her nails or hunch her shoulders. She asks her to sit up straight. She seems to be angry and critical.

**Q. 1. Who is speaking here ?**

**Ans.** The speaker is Amanda's mother.

**Q. 2. What is she asking her not to do ?**

**Ans.** She is asking her not to bit her nails or hunch her shoulders.

**Q. 3. The poem is written by ..... (choose the correct answer).**

- (a) Robert Frost      (b) Robin Klein  
(c) John Berryman    (d) Amanda.

**Ans.** (b).

2. *There is a languid, emerald sea,  
Where the sole inhabitant is me  
a mermaid, drifting blissfully.*

**Explanation :** This stanza describes a scene of Amanda's imaginary world. She is a mermaid, drifting happily in a calm sea. She is the only mermaid there and loves being there.

**Q. 1. What is the mermaid doing ?**

**Ans.** The mermaid is drifting happily in the calm sea.

**Q. 2. Who is the mermaid ?**

**Ans.** The mermaid is actually Amanda, in her world of fancy.

**Q. 3. From which poem is the extract taken ? (Choose the correct answer)**

- (a) The ball poem      (b) Dust of snow  
(c) Amanda              (d) Fog.

**Ans.** (c).

3. *Did you finish - your home work, Amanda ?  
Did you tidy your room, Amanda ?  
I thought I told you to clean  
your shoes, Amanda.*

**Explanation :** The stanza describes the real world to Amanda. Here, again mother asks Miranda if she had finished her homework and tidied her room. Again she reminds Amanda of cleaning her shoes. The mother's tone is stern. She does want Amanda to learn to be responsible and be a disciplined person. To Amanda, it seems too much and she neglects her mother's well-intentioned commands.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. What does mother ask Amanda ?**

**Ans.** She asks Amanda if she has finished her home work, tidied her room and cleaned her shoes.

**Q. 2. Do you think Amanda obeys her mother ?**

**Ans.** Amanda does not seem to obey her mother.

**Q. 3. 'Did you finish your homework ? Show that Amanda is a ..... .**

- (a) A small child                      (b) A school going girl  
(c) An intelligent girl                (d) An intelligent boy.

**Ans.** (b).



4. *I am an orphan, roaming the street.*

*I pattern soft dust with  
my hushed, bare feet,*

*The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet.*

**Explanation :** The harsh commands of her mother again send her to her dreamworld. She feels that she would be better if she were an orphan. She could walk barefoot freely making designs in the dust. She likes the silence of the place. There are no harsh words from her mother. The freedom makes her happy, no one interferes with what she wants to do.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. What is Amanda in this stanza ?**

**Ans.** In this stanza Amanda is a beggar.

**Q. 2. Does Amanda like being a beggar ? Why?**

**Ans.** Yes, because it gives her freedom from her mother's commands and instructions.

**Q. 3. Does Amanda like the silence ?**

**Ans.** Yes, she likes the silence.

5. *Don't eat that chocolate, Amanda !*

*Remember your acne, Amanda !*

*Will you please look at me when I'm*

*Speaking to you.*

**Explanation :** The cold commands of Amanda's mother continue. This time she is ordered not to eat the chocolate as it will develop acne on her face. She also instructs her to look at her when she is speaking to her and not paying attention to her commands.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Why is Amanda asked not to eat chocolate?**

**Ans.** Amanda is asked not to eat chocolate because it will cause pimples.

**Q. 2. Who is the speaker here ? Choose the correct option.**

- (a) Amanda                      (b) Amanda's teacher  
(c) Amanda's father      (d) Amanda's mother.

**Ans.** (d).

**Q. 3. At what age, do you think, Amanda is ?**

**Ans.** She should be twelve or thirteen years. Pimples may occur at this stage.

6. *I am Rapunzel, I have not a care;*

*Life in a tower is tranquil and rare;*

*I'll certainly never let down my*

*bright hair.*

**Explanation :** The commands of mother again send her into her fantasy. This time she thinks that she is Rapunzel. She is imprisoned in a tower without doors but it is a silent and rare place. In the story, she lowers her long hair to allow the witch to come up the tower. She also lets her lover come this way but Amanda says she will not let down her hair to allow someone in the tower. She likes the lonely place, safe from her mother's commands and instructions.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Who or what is Rapunzel ?**

**Ans.** Rapunzel in the story, is a beautiful girl, imprisoned in the tower by a witch.

**Q. 2. Why does Amanda want to live in the tower ?**

**Ans.** She wants to live in the tower, to be a way from her parent's command. There, she feels, she is in bondage. In the tower, she feels secure.

**Q. 3. Amanda likes to live in the tower because? (Choose the correct option)**

- (a) It is very high
- (b) She feels secure there
- (c) She has a grand view of surrounding's
- (d) All of these.

**Ans.** (b).

*7. Stop that sulking at once, Amanda !*

*You're always so moody, Amanda !*

*Anyone would think that I nagged to you.*

**Explanation :** In the last stanza again Amanda is being instructed. To her parents she seems to be sulking (cross/angry) and has frequent change of moods. The speaker feels that if anyone saw Amanda like that, they would think that she was being nagged.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Who is the speaker of these lines ?**

**Ans.** One of the parents, most probably the mother is the speaker.

**Q. 2. What is Amanda asked to do ?**

**Ans.** Amanda is asked not to sulk or be moody.

**Q. 3. Does the person rebuke Amanda ?**

**Ans.** The tone suggests that the person is rebuking Amanda. It is possible with over-protective parents.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How old do you think Amanda is ? How do you know this ?**

**Ans.** Amanda should be in her early teens. The reference to acne points to this.

**Q. 2. Who, do you think is speaking to her ?**

**Ans.** One of the parents is speaking to her. It may be her mother because mothers generally take care of the children (At least in India).

**Q. 3. What could Amanda do if she was a mermaid ?**

**Ans.** If Amanda was a mermaid, she could drift in the calm, emerald sea blissfully. She would be saved from her mother's constant instructions. She could enjoy her freedom.

**Q. 4. Is Amanda an orphan ? Why does she say so ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** Amanda is not an orphan. She says so, because she is upset with the constant nagging. She feels that as an orphan she could enjoy the golden silence and sweet freedom. Her mother's restrictions are too much for her.

**Q. 5. Do you know the story of Rapunzel ? Why does she want to be Rapunzel ?**

**Ans.** Yes, Rapunzel was imprisoned in a tower. She was a beautiful girl, with very long hair. If she wanted someone to come to her, she would let down her hair and the person could come up using the hair as a rope. Amanda wants to be put in a tower which is silent and where her mother cannot come to instruct her.

**Q. 6. What does the girl yearn for ? What does the poem tell you about Amanda ?**

**Ans.** The girl Amanda yearns for peace and freedom. She feels like a prisoner in her house. Her mother is always instructing her. She seems to be normal girl, may be a bit more sensitive.

**Q. 7. What are the things that Amanda's mother ask her to do and not to do ?**

(M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Amanda's mother asks her not to bite her nails or hunch her shoulders. She asks her to sit in a proper posture. Again she asks her to finish her homework, tidy her room and clean her shoes. Finally, she asks her to stop sulking and tell her not to eat chocolate.



**Q. 8. How does Amanda describe her life as an orphan ?**

**Ans.** Amanda wants to live the life of an orphan. Then she can freely roam about the streets and make patterns on the soft dust with her barefeet. An orphan's life is not easy or enjoyable but Amanda likes its freedom and silence.

**Q. 9. Why does the mother ask Amanda not to eat chocolate ?**

**Ans.** Mother asks Amanda not to eat the chocolate because she has had acne and eating chocolate could again bring acne on her which will make her face ugly. Amanda does not pay attention to her.

**Q. 10. What does the poem tell us about Amanda's mother ?**

**Ans.** The poem describes Amanda's mother as an over dominating woman. She keeps on instructing Amanda to do this or that. Naturally Amanda does not like it. Her constant ordering has made Amanda insensitive. She may really be an extremely caring mother but her ways produce a negative effect. She fails to understand her child's psychology.

**Q. 11. Why does Amanda seem moody all the time ?**

**Ans.** Her mother's constant instructions have made Amanda moody. To escape from her harsh commands she goes into her imagination world where she finds freedom, silence and happiness. She is mostly in this world and so she looks moody.

### Long Answer Type Question

**Q. 1. Amanda has her own world where she is happy. Which places does she visit and what roles she plays there in ?**

**Ans.** The poem describes three fancies of Amanda. In the first fancy, she is a mermaid. She drifts over the calm sea where she is alone. In the second fancy, she is an orphan. She has no shoes. She makes patterns on the soft dust with her barefeet. She likes the silence of the place and enjoys her freedom. In her third fancy she is Rapunzel who was kept in a tower by a wicked witch. She likes the isolation. Here, there is no mother or father to nag her. All these fancies are here means to escape from the real world and the constant control and nagging of her mother.

**Q. 2. Do you know the story of 'Rapunzel'? Why does she (Amanda) want to be Rapunzel ?**

**Ans.** Yes, we know the story of Rapunzel, who lived alone in a tall tower and had long and beautiful hair. She was held captive by her grandmother, who came up the tower by climbing her long hair. Amanda wants to be Rapunzel because one day she might be free. (M.P. 2022)

## 7. THE TREES

— Adrienne Rich

### Extracts for Comprehension

- The trees inside are moving out into the forest,  
the forest that was empty all these days  
where no bird could sit  
no insect hide  
no sun bury its feet in shadow  
the forest that was empty all these nights  
will be full of trees by morning.*

**Explanation :** The poet says that the trees inside the house are moving. They are going to the empty forest. Without trees birds could not perch and insects could not hide. The Sun's rays could not rest in the shadow. In the morning the forest will be filled with

trees. We know that trees can not move. The poet is pointing out that trees are not happy in their artificial home.

Questions :

Q. 1. Name the poem and the poet of the extract.

Ans. The poem is 'Trees' written by Adrienne Rich.

Q. 2. What are the trees doing ?

Ans. The trees are moving out into the forest.

Q. 3. Where do birds generally sit ?

Ans. The birds sit on the branches of trees.

2. *All night the roots work  
to disengage themselves from the cracks  
in the veranda floor.*

*The leaves stain toward the glass*

*small twigs stiff with exertion*

*long-cramped boughs shuffling under the roof*

*like newly discharged patients*

*half-dazed, moving*

*to the clinic doors.*

Explanation : In this stanza the poet describes how the trees, rooted to the ground struggle for freedom. The roots work all night to come out of the concrete floor, the leaves dash against the glass panes. Twigs are exerting and cramped branches move about under the roof. They are moving slowly like patients newly discharged from the hospital move unsteadily to the doors. The simile is very apt.

Questions :

Q. 1. What are the roots doing ?

Ans. The roots are trying to free themselves from the cracks in the veranda floor.

Q. 2. Why are the boughs long cramped ?

Ans. The boughs are long cramped because there is not much space for them under the roof.

Q. 3. What is the movement of the boughs compared with ?

Ans. The movement of the boughs is compared with the unsteady movement of newly discharged patients as they move towards the doors.

3. *I sit inside, doors open to the veranda  
writing long letters  
in which I scarcely mention the departure  
of the forest from the house*

*The night is fresh, the whole moon shines*

*in a sky still open*

*the smell of leaves and lichen*

*still reaches like a voice into the rooms.*

Explanation : The poetess is writing letters. Her doors are open, so, she can possibly see what is happening. She writes nothing about the trees in her letters. She can see the full moon shining. She also gets the smell of leaves and lichen from the open door like a voice coming into rooms which means that they are still present.

Questions :

Q. 1. What is the poetess doing ?

Ans. She is writing long letters.

Q. 2. Scarcely mention the departure of the forest from the house means .....

Choose the correct option.

(a) The poetess gives a detailed description of the departure of forest from the house.

(b) She gives a short account description of the departure of forest from the house.



(c) She hardly mentions the event.

(d) All of these.

Ans. (c) She hardly mentions the event.

**Q. 3. Which smell is reaching the poetess ?**

Ans. The smell of leaves and lichen is reaching the poetess.

4. *My head is full of whispers  
which tomorrow will be silent  
Listen. The glass is breaking.  
The trees are stumbling forward  
into the night. Winds rush to meet them.  
The moon is broken like a mirror  
its pieces flash now in the crown  
of the tallest oak.*

**Explanation :** The poet can hear whispering sounds of the leaves and twigs. Tomorrow, there will be no sounds. She can hear the glass breaking. All parts of the tree are struggling to go out. The trees are moving slowly into the night. As they go out winds welcome them into the forest. Now, the full moon is not seen, its light is checked by the crown of the tallest oak tree. So, only a part of it is visible. Thus, the trees have reached the forest.

**Q. 1. Why will the whispers be silent tomorrow ?**

Ans. The whispers are the sounds of trees. They will be silent because the trees will go into the forest.

**Q. 2. How do the trees move ? Choose the correct answer.**

(a) They move fast

(b) They do not move

(c) They stumble on the path

(d) They whisper.

Ans. (c) They stumble on the path

**(iii) How does the moon appear now ?**

Ans. It is broken. Its light is stopped by the crown of the oak tree.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. (i) Where are the trees in the poem ? What do their roots, their leaves and their twigs do ?**

(M.P. 2022)

Ans. The trees in the poem are inside the house. All parts of the tree struggle to get out to the forest. The roots try to free themselves from the cracks in the Veranda floor. The leaves try to break the glass panes. Small twigs stiffen and the cramped boughs move about trying to escape.

**(ii) What does the poet compare the branches to ?**

Ans. The poet compares the branches to patients newly discharged from the hospital and moving unsteadily towards the doors.

**Q. 2. Now that you have read the poem in detail, we can begin to ask what the poem might mean : Here are two suggestions. Can you think of others ?**

**(i) Does the poem present a conflict between man and nature ? Compare it with 'A tiger in the zoo'. Is the poet suggesting that plants and trees, used for 'interior decoration' in cities while forests are cut down, are 'imprisoned' and need to break out ?**

Ans. There definitely is a conflict between man and nature. The tiger in the zoo, or the plants used for interior decoration both feel imprisoned. On the other hand, there is also the question of conservation of specific species like the tiger.

**Q. 3. Why are the trees moving to the forest ?**

**Ans.** The trees described here are ornamental and kept inside a house. Here, they feel like being in a prison. So, they struggle to free themselves from the house and move towards the forest which is their natural home.

**Q. 4. With what does the poet compare the movement of trees ? And why ?**

**Ans.** The poet compares the shuffling movement of trees with the newly discharged patients who walk slowly and unsteadily towards the doors of the clinic. She does so because both the movements are slow and clumsy.

**Q. 5. How will the departure of the trees affect the house ?**

**Ans.** The poet hears whispers as the trees move. These are the sounds of the leaves and twigs as they move. When the trees have gone there will be only silence. The poet seems to say this sadly.

**Q. 6. Where does the poetess sit and why ? Why doesn't she mention the departure of trees in her letters ?**

**Ans.** The poetess is sitting in her room with doors open and to the veranda to write letters. She does not mention the departure of trees in her letters because it is an unexpected event. She is too stunned to react.

**Q. 7. How do the trees change the forest ?**

**Ans.** When the trees come to the forest, there is place for birds to sit and insects to hide. The rays of the sun falling on trees can bury themselves in shadow. In fact, a forest without trees is not a forest at all.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. The trees in the poem stretch out their branches, break barriers and struggle hard to move out in the open in their natural environment.**

**Analyse the efforts that one puts into break away captivity and strive for freedom ?**

**Ans.** We saw the trees in the poem working hard to get to their natural home, the forest. History of mankind is full of stories of high sacrifices to achieve freedom. The struggle may be at individual level if one's own freedom is involved. Sometimes we see students their voice against an unjust command. India's struggle for freedom is the best example. It was fought at many fronts. The revolutionaries gave their life in it. Gandhiji used non-violence. The combined efforts won freedom for us.

Similarly, in the second world war the allied force fought against imperialist Hitler. So, we can say that freedom is our birthright and we must fight to achieve it.

**Q. 2. What message does Adrienne Rich want to convey through the poem, 'The trees'?**

**Ans.** The poet describes how the trees struggle to move to the forest. So, the message of conservation is clear. We have cut down forests for our use. Thus, the trees and animals both have lost their habitat. Forest is also home to birds and insects. A small plant adjust easily in a home but trees need forests. So one message is that of afforestation. There is one other aspect because the poet is a feminist. In that light, the trees moving out symbolise women restrictions, put on the women all over the world. The trees moving out symbolise women coming out of their prisons. These prisons are not just physical, they can be emotional also. Our country also puts restrictions on women though things and views are gradually changing. We hope that everyone enjoys their freedom.



## 8. FOG

— Carl Sandburg

**Extract for Comprehension**

1. *The fog comes  
on little cat feet.  
It sits looking  
over harbour and city  
on silent haunches  
and then moves on.*

**Explanation :** The fog comes noiselessly and slowly like a cat. It covers the city and the harbour and stays there like a cat sitting on its haunches. After some time, just like the cat, the fog disappears from the harbour and the city, possibly to cover other areas. (M.P. 2023)

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. The poet of these lines is .....**

(a) Walt Whitman (b) Carl Sandburg (c) Robert Frost (d) Sarojini Naidu.

**Ans. (b) Carl Sandburg.**

**Q. 2. What does the fog cover ?**

**Ans. It covers the city and the harbour.**

**Q. 3. Who is 'it' in the third line ?**

**Ans. 'It' is the third line in the fog.**

**Q. 4. What has been personified in above given lines :**

(a) Harbour (b) City (c) Fog (d) Cat.

**Q. 5. After sitting fog .....**

(a) Disappears (b) Moves on (c) Sits there only (d) Gets dense.

**Q. 6. The poet of the above poem is .....**

(a) Pablo Neruda (b) Robert Frost (c) Robin Klein (d) Carl Sandburg.

**Ans. 4. (c), 5. (b), 6. (d).**

**Short Answer Type Questions**

**Q. 1. (i) What does Sandburg think the fog is like?**

**Ans. The fog is like a cat moving noiselessly and slowly.**

**(ii) How does the fog come ?**

**Ans. The fog come slowly and silently.**

**(iii) What does 'it' in the third line refer to ?**

**Ans. It in the third line refers to fog compared with a cat.**

**(iv) Does the poet actually say that the fog is like a cat ? Find three things that tells us that the fog is like a cat.**

**Ans. The three things which are similar between the fog and the cat are they both come silently, they sit (stay) silently and then move off silently.**

**Q. 2. How does fog come and what is its effect ?**

**Ans. The fog comes slowly and silently. It covers the city and the harbour completely. It causes poor visibility. Then it moves away very silently.**

**Q. 3. How does the poet describe fog by using the 'cat' in a metaphor ?**

**Ans. The fog comes slowly. There is no sound as in case of a thunder. Cat also moves slowly and silently. When it covers the city it stops. It is like the cat sitting on its haunches. Then it moves away, silently like a cat.**

**Q. 4. How is the fog like a cat ? What three things suggest this ?**

**Ans. The poet has aptly compared the fog with the cat. They both move silently and slowly. The fog covers the city and the harbour and then stops moving like a cat sitting on its haunches. Then it moves away silently like the cat.**

## 9. THE TALE OF CUSTARD THE DRAGON

— Ogden Nash

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *Belinda lived in a little white house,  
With a little black kitten and a little grey mouse,  
And a little yellow dog and a little red wagon  
And a realio, trulio little pet dragon.*

**Explanation :** Belinda lived in a little white house. She had four pets, a black kitten, a grey mouse, a yellow dog and a pet dragon. She also had a red wagon.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Where did Belinda live ?**

**Ans.** She lived in a little white house.

**Q. 2. What pets did she have ?**

**Ans.** She had a kitten, a mouse, a dog and dragon as pets.

**Q. 3. What colour was the kitten ?**

**Ans.** The kitten was black.

2. *Now the name of the little black kitten was Ink,  
And the little grey mouse, she called him Blink,  
And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard,  
But the dragon was a coward, and she called him Custard.*

**Explanation :** The black kitten was called Ink. The grey mouse was called Blink, the little yellow dog was called Mustard because he was sharp. The dragon was a coward and called Custard.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Fill in the blanks :**

(a) The dog was named .....

(b) The cat was called .....

(c) The dragon was called .....

**Ans.** (a) Mustard, (b) Ink, (c) Custard.

3. *Custard, the dragon had big sharp teeth,  
And spikes on top of him and scales underneath  
Mouth like a fireplace, chimney for a nose,  
And realio, trulio daggers on his toes.*

**Explanation :** This stanza describes the dragon. He had big sharp teeth. He had spikes on top and scales underneath. His mouth was like a fireplace spitting fire and his nose giving out smoke resembled a chimney. And his toes had real daggers. In short the dragon seems strong and aggressive. In spite of all this the dragon was a coward.

**Questions :**

**Q. (i) On the dragon's body there were .....**

(ii) His toes had .....

(iii) Dragon's mouth was like a .....

**Ans.** (i) Spikes

(ii) daggers (meaning very sharp nails)

(iii) Fireplace.

4. *Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears,  
And Ink and Blink chased lions down the stairs,  
Mustard was as brave as a tiger in a rage,  
But Custard cried for a nice safe cage.*



**Explanation :** The poet says that Belinda was as brave as a number of bears together. Ink and Blink could chase lions down the stairs. The dog, Mustard was as brave as an angry lion. On the contrary, The Custard, the dragon was cowardly and cried to be put in a nice safe cage.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. How brave was Belinda ?**

**Ans.** She was as brave as a number of bears together.

**Q. 2. What is the dog Mustard compared to ?**

**Ans.** The dog Mustard is as brave as an angry lion.

**Q. 3. What did Custard want ?**

**Ans.** Custard wanted a nice, safe cage.

5. *Suddenly, Suddenly they heard a nasty sound,  
And Mustard growled, and they are looked around  
Meowch! cried Ink and ooh! cried Belinda  
For there was a pirate climbing in the window.*

**Explanation :** They were making fun of Custard when suddenly they heard an unpleasant sound. Mustard, the dog growled, Ink mewed, Malinda cried oh! because all of them saw a pirate climbing in the window.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. What did they suddenly hear ?**

**Ans.** They heard an unpleasant sound.

**Q. 2. What did they see ?**

**Ans.** They saw a pirate in the window.

**Q. 3. How did Belinda react ?**

**Ans.** Belinda cried, 'Ooh !'

6. *Belinda paled and she cried Help ! Help!  
But Mustard fled with a terrified yelp.  
Ink trickled down to the bottom of the house hold,  
And little mouse Blink strategically mouseholed.*

**Explanation :** Belinda who was as brave as a barrel of bears lost colour and cried for help. Mustard gave a terrified yelp and ran away. Ink, the cat moved down and Blink the mouse went into the hole. So, all the brave pets of Belinda ran away in her time of need.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. How did Mustard act in the situation ?**

**Ans.** Mustard, who was as brave as a tiger in anger gave a yelp and ran away.

**Q. 2. Where did Blink go ?**

**Ans.** Blink, the mouse went into a mousehole.

**Q. 3. Do these lines show Belinda as a brave girl ?**

**Ans.** No, she becomes afraid and cries for help.

7. *The pirate gaped at Belinda's dragon,  
And gulped some grog from his pocket flagon,  
He fired two bullets, but they didn't hit,  
And Custard gobbled him, every bit.*

**Explanation :** The pirate was not ready for the dragon. He looked at it intently, took out a small container and gulped down some wine. Then he fired two bullets but missed. In the meantime the dragon attacked him and swallowed every bit of the pirate.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. What did the pirate gulp down ?**

**Ans.** The pirate gulped down some wine from a flagon.

**Q. 2. Did the pirate shoot at Custard ? What was the result ?**

**Ans.** The pirate shot at Custard but he missed the aim.

**Q. 3. What did the dragon do to the pirate ?**

**Ans.** The dragon swallowed every bit of the pirate.

**Ans.** No, she lives in the same white house.

**8. Belinda is as brave as a barrel full of bears**

*And Ink and Blink chase lions down the stairs,*

*Mustard is as brave as a tiger in a cage,*

*But Custard keeps crying for a nice safe cage.*

**Explanation :** The poet says that after the danger is gone Belinda is again as brave as many bears. Blink and Ink can chase lions down the stairs and the dog Mustard is as brave as a tiger in anger. Ofcourse, Custard keeps on crying for a nice safe cage. He is cowardly.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. Fill in the blanks :**

(i) Belinda is as brave as .....

(ii) Blink and Ink can chase .....down the stairs.

(iii) Mustard is as brave as a tiger in .....

**Ans.** (i) Many bears, (ii) Lions, (iii) anger.

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Who are the characters in this poem ? List them with their pet names.**

**Ans.** There are four pets, a black kitten, a grey mouse, a yellow dog and a dragon. The kitten is called Ink, the mouse Blink, the dog Mustard and the dragon Custard. Two more characters are Belinda and the pirate.

**Q. 2. Why did Custard cry for a nice safe cage ? Why is the dragon called cowardly dragon ?** (M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** The dragon cries for a nice, safe cage, because he is afraid of things. He is rightly called a cowardly dragon because he acts like a very much afraid dragon.

**Q. 3. "Belinda tickled him she tickled him unmerciful" why ?**

**Ans.** Belinda tickled him mercilessly to exite him because he was a lazy dragon. Also, it amused him. Her pets and she made fun of the cowardly dragon.

**Q. 4. Describe the dreadful appearance of the pirate.**

**Ans.** The pirate looked very dreadful. He had pistols in both hands and held a cutlass between his teeth. He had a black beard and a wooden leg.

**Q. 5. 'But Custard cried for a nice safe cage.' Who is Custard ? Why did he cry for a nice safe cage ?**

**Ans.** Custard is the pet dragon of Belinda. Though, he had a terryfying body, he was a coward. So he wanted a nice-safe cage.

**Q. 6. Why was Custard teased as Percival ?**

**Ans.** Percival was a brave knight of king Arthur. Custard on the other hand was cowardly. So, Ink, Blink and Mustard made fun of him by calling him Percival.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How did Custard prove that he was not a coward ?**

**Or, How did Custard face the pirate ?**

**Ans.** When the pirate came all other pets ran away and hid themselves. The brave Belinda cried for help. The Custard came foward. He attacked the pirate. The pirate shot at him twice but missed Custard swallowed him up in no time.



**Q. 2. Were Belinda and her pets grateful to Custard now ?**

**Ans.** When the pirate was gulped by Custard. Belinda was grateful to Custard and hugged him. The dog Mustard licked him and Ink and Blink moved round him to express gratitude. But it was for a short time. After that, they again began to boast of their bravery.

**Q. 3. The humble dragon proved his bravery in adversity. Discuss qualities like courage and bravery are situational and spontaneous.**

**Or, Attempt a summary of the poem 'The tale of Custard-the dragon.'**

**Ans.** In the story, Belinda and all her pets claim to be brave. Belinda is braver than a barrel full of bears. Ink and Blink can chase away lions and the dog Mustard was as brave as an angry lion. Poor Custard was a coward and everyone made fun of him. The scene changes when a pirate arrives. He held pistols in both hands and a cutlass in his teeth. The three brave animals, the kitten, the mouse and the dog just run away. The brave Belinda cries for help. Now Custard comes into action. The pirate fires at him but misses and Custard the cowardly dragon simply swallows him. Custard does not boast of his bravery but he shows it at the right time. Actions speak louder than words.

## 10. FOR ANNE GREGORY

— William Butler Yeats

### Extracts for Comprehension

1. *'Never shall a young man  
Thrown into despair  
By those great honey-coloured  
Ramparts at your ear,  
Love you for yourself alone  
And not your yellow hair.'*

**Explanation :** In these lines the young man tells Ann Gregory that her beautiful honey coloured hair can make any young man fall in love with her. He says that these honey coloured hair around her ears are like walls which do not allow anyone to look into her inner beauty. So, she will be loved only for her outer beauty.

**Questions :**

**Q. 1. What colour is Ann's hair ?**

**Ans.** Ann's hair is honey-coloured.

**Q. 2. What does the poet compare her hair with?**

**Ans.** The poet compares her hair with the wall of a fort.

**Q. 3. Who is the poet of the poem ?**

**Ans.** W.B. Yeats is the poet of this poem.

2. *"But I can get a hair-dye  
And set such colour there,  
Brown, or black, or carrot,  
Tht young men in despair  
May love me for myself alone  
And not my yellow hair."*

**Explanation :** Ann replies to the speaker that she can change the colour of her hair to black or brown or carrot using a dye. Thus, the young man will love her for herself, for her inner beauty and not only her hair. (her outer beauty). Anne points out that the outer appearance is artificial and so, not the true person.

Questions :

Q. 1. From which poem is the extract taken ?

Ans. The extract is taken from the poem 'For Ann Gregory'.

Q. 2. What change does she suggest, she can make ?

Ans. She suggests that she can change the colour of her hair.

Q. 3. Why does she want to change the colour of her hair.

Ans. She wants to change the colour of her hair so that she is not loved only for her outer beauty but for real self.

3. 'I heard an old religious man

But yesternight declare

That he had found text to prove

That only God, my dear,

Could love you for yourself alone

And not your yellow hair."

Explanation : In this concluding stanza the young man says that he heard a religious man declare last night on the basis of a text that only God has the capacity to love a person for his/her real self and not their outer appearance.

Questions :

Q. 1. Who is the speaker here ?

Ans. The speaker is the young man talking to Ann Gregory.

Q. 2. What did the old religious man say ?

Ans. The old religious man said on the basis of a text that God alone loves a person for himself/herself and not his external appearance.

Q. 3. Ann Gregory is 'a/n, ugly/beautiful' girl. (Choose the correct option)

Ans. A beautiful girl.

### Short Answer Type Questions

Q. 1. What does the young man mean by "great honey coloured/Rampart at your ears?"

Why does he say that young men are thrown into dipair by them ?

Ans. The phrase "great honey coloured Ramparts at your ears refers to the beautiful hair of Ann Gregory. They are called ramparts or fortwalls because they prevent young man from looking into her inner beauty. The young men are thrown into despair because the beautiful hair attract them and they fall in love with her.

Q. 2. What colour is the young woman's hair ? What does she say she can change it to ? Why would she want to do so ?

Ans. The young woman's hair is honey coloured. She can change them to black, brown or carrot colour. She would want to do so, so that the young man could see her inner beauty and love her for that alone.

Q. 3. What does the young man say to Anne Gregory ?

(M.P. 2023)

Ans. The young man says that young men would love her only for her outer beauty, her honey coloured hair. They would never love her for what she really is? For her real self.

Q. 2. What did the old religious man declare ? What did he want to prove ?

Ans. The old religious man said that he had found a text last night. It said that only God is capable of loving a person for himself/herself. He alone has the power to look beyond the external beauty. He wanted to prove that God alone can see our inner beauty.



## MULTIPLE - CHOICE QUESTIONS FROM POEM

### 1. DUST OF SNOW

1. Who is the poet of the poem 'Dust of Snow' :  
(a) Robert Frost    (b) Ogden Nash    (c) Walt Whitman    (d) W.B. Yeats.
2. What did the cow shake on the poet :  
(a) Dust of soil    (b) Dust of snow    (c) Dust of tree    (d) Dust of ash.
3. The dust of snow affected the poet by :  
(a) Making him superior    (b) Making him energetic  
(c) Changing his mood    (d) None of these.
4. Where was the crow sitting :  
(a) On a banyan tree    (b) On a neem tree  
(c) On a pine tree    (d) On a hemlock tree.
5. What has the poet saved in the poem "Dust of Snow" :  
(a) Some part of the day    (b) Some books  
(c) Some stories    (d) Some money.

### 2. FIRE AND ICE

6. Who has written the poem "Fire and Ice" :  
(a) Robert Frost    (b) John Keats    (c) W.B. Yeats    (d) S.T. Coleridge.
7. What does 'ice' symbolize in the poem 'Fire and Ice' :  
(a) Desire    (b) Hatred    (c) Love    (d) Pain.
8. What does 'fire' symbolize in the poem 'Fire and Ice':  
(a) Desire    (b) Hatred    (c) Love    (d) Pain.
9. What is the meaning of 'perish' :  
(a) Rise    (b) Birth    (c) Glow    (d) Die.
10. According to Robert Frost, what will end one day :  
(a) World    (b) Water    (c) Air    (d) Plants.

### 3. A TIGER IN THE ZOO

11. Who has written the poem 'A tiger in the zoo' :  
(a) Leslie Norris    (b) Robert Frost    (c) W.B. Yeats    (d) John Keats.
12. The tiger looks at..... :  
(a) Cars    (b) Stars    (c) House    (d) None.
13. Who passes near the water hole ?  
(a) Elephant    (b) Buffalo    (c) Deer    (d) None.
14. Caged tiger ..... the visitors :  
(a) Terrorizes    (b) Kills    (c) Welcomes    (d) Ignores.
15. Where should tiger hide himself :  
(a) In shadows    (b) In car    (c) In zoo    (d) In house.

### 5. THE BALL POEM

16. Who has composed 'The Ball Poem' :  
(a) John Berryman    (b) Carolyn Wells    (c) Leslie Norris    (d) Robin Klein.
17. Where was the boy staring down :  
(a) The sea    (b) The harbour    (c) The ocean    (d) The lake.

18. What does a ball cost :  
 (a) 10 dime (b) 1 dime (c) 15 dime (d) 4 dime.
19. What was the boy playing with :  
 (a) A ball (b) A car (c) A bus (d) A bat.
20. Where does the ball go :  
 (a) In bushes (b) In water (c) On the roof (d) In the jungle.

### 6. AMANDA

21. The poem 'Amanda' is composed by :  
 (a) Robert Frost (b) John Berryman (c) Robin Klein (d) Amanda.
22. "Stop that slouching and sit up straight".  
 Which of these figures of speech has the poet used in the above line :  
 (a) Metaphor (b) Simile (c) Personification (d) Alliteration.
23. Which of these causes Acne according to the speaker in the poem Amanda :  
 (a) Biting nails (b) Eating chocolates  
 (c) Eating pizzas (d) Cleaing the room.
24. According to Amanda freedom is :  
 (a) Sour (b) Sweet (c) Bitter (d) All of these.
25. Which of these messages does the poet want to convey through the poem 'Amanda' :  
 (a) Children need instruction (b) Children should be given freedom  
 (c) Children must be disciplined (d) None of the above.
26. The poem 'Amanda' is about ..... :  
 (a) Teacher psychology (b) Parent psychology  
 (c) Child psychology (d) None of these.
27. Amanda wants to be an orphan ..... :  
 (a) To feel the condition of an orphan  
 (b) To enjoy the freedom that an orphan has  
 (c) To avoid going to school  
 (d) To play with orphan children.
28. What made Amanda sulk and moody :  
 (a) When she had to complete her homework  
 (b) When her mother gave her too many instructions.  
 (c) When she had to clean her shoes  
 (d) When she ate chocolates.
29. Why should Amanda not eat chocolates :  
 (a) It causes heart disease. (b) It will damage liver.  
 (c) It causes acne (d) It causes cancer.
30. What does Amanda imagine to be when she pictures herself in a tower :  
 (a) Mermaid (b) Orphan (c) Rapunzel (d) Fairy.

### 7. THE TREES

31. Who has been personified in the line "No Sun bury its feet in shadow" :  
 (a) Sun (b) Feet (c) Shadow (d) None of the above.
32. What are the trees compared to :  
 (a) Insects (b) Newly discharged patients  
 (c) Birds (d) Children.
33. What reaches like a voice into the rooms :  
 (a) Noise of the roots (b) Shuffling of the branches  
 (c) Smell of leaves and lichens (d) Light of the moon.



34. What rushes to meet the trees :  
 (a) Wind (b) Light (c) Sun (d) Moon.
35. What rushes out to meet the trees :  
 (a) Wind (b) Man (c) Water (d) Fire.
36. What does the poetess compare the tree branches to :  
 (a) An old patient (b) A newly discharged patient  
 (c) A doctor (d) None of these.
37. Where are the decorative plants kept :  
 (a) In open areas (b) In play areas  
 (c) In houses (d) None of these.
38. What type of trees are described in the poem, 'The trees' :  
 (a) Tall trees (b) Short plants (c) Decorative trees (d) All of these.
39. By morning, the forest will be full of ..... :  
 (a) Insects (b) Sun (c) Trees (d) Birds.
40. What is the poetess doing :  
 (a) Writing long letters (b) Reading  
 (c) Sleeping (d) Watching Television
41. The pieces of the moon can be seen in the crown of which tree :  
 (a) Apple tree (b) Hemlock tree  
 (c) Oak tree (d) Walnut tree.
42. Who has been personified in the line, "No sun bury its feet in shadow" :  
 (a) Sun (b) Feet  
 (c) Shadow (d) None of the above.
43. Name the literary device used in "The moon is broken like a mirror" :  
 (a) Metaphor (b) Simile (c) alliteration (d) Imagery.

### 10. FOR ANNE GREGORY

45. What colour will the girl dye her hair into :  
 (a) Black (b) Brown (c) Carrot (d) All the above.
46. What is the mood of the young man :  
 (a) Sad (b) Happy (c) Romantic (d) Miserable.
47. What does the girl want :  
 (a) To be loved for herself (b) To be loved for her hair  
 (c) To be loved for her appearance (d) To be loved for her riches.
48. What is the colour of the ramparts of the young lady :  
 (a) Golden (b) Honey (c) Silver (d) Brown.
49. Who is the poet of the poem "For Anne Gregory" :  
 (a) Carl Sandburg (b) William Butler Yeats  
 (c) Carolyn Wells (d) Walt Whitman.
50. What matters for God more to love human beings :  
 (a) The outer qualities of human beings (b) The inner qualities of human beings  
 (c) Their rituals (d) None of the above.
- Ans.** 1. (a), 2. (b), 3. (c), 4. (d), 5. (a), 6. (a), 7. (d), 8. (a), 9. (d), 10. (a), 11. (a), 12. (b),  
 13. (c), 14. (d), 15. (a), 16. (a), 17. (b), 18. (b), 19. (a), 20. (b), 21. (c), 22. (d),  
 23. (b), 24. (b), 25. (b), 26. (c), 27. (b), 28. (b), 29. (c), 30. (c), 31. (a), 32. (b), 33. (c),  
 34. (a), 35. (a), 36. (b), 37. (c), 38. (c), 39. (c), 40. (a), 41. (c), 42. (c), 43. (a), 44. (b),  
 45. (d), 45. (a), 47. (a), 48. (b), 49. (b), 50. (b).

PROSE SECTION

1. A TRIUMPH OF SURGERY

— James Herriot

Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Why is Mrs. Pumphrey worried about Tricki ?**

**Ans.** Mrs. Pumphrey is worried about Tricki her pet dog because he has grown fat and listless. He does not want to eat and vomits often his eyes are red and rheumy. He seems sick and that worries the mistress.

**Q. 2. What does she do to help him ? Is she wise in this ?**

**Ans.** Mrs. Pumphrey is worried about the dog's condition. She consults Dr. Harriot telling him about the dog's condition. She thinks that the dog needs more nutrition and overfeeds him. However, it was wise for her to consult the vet who finally cured the dog.

**Q. 3. How does he treat the dog ?**

**Ans.** Dr. Harriot realizes that the problem with Tricki is that he is overfed. Mrs. Pumphrey pampers him a lot, overfeeding him, So the doctor does not give him any food for two days but plenty of water after three days the dog begins to recover, He moves about with other dogs and competes for food, with exercise and healthy food, he is completely transformed into a healthy, agile dog.

**Q. 4. Why is he tempted to keep Tricki on as a permanent guest ?**

**Ans.** Mrs. Pumphrey, the dog's owner is a rich lady. She sends eggs, brandy and wine for the dog, hoping that these will help in the quick recovery of the dog. The doctor knows that they are not good for the dog but he and his partners enjoy the thing. So, the doctor is tempted to keep Tricki on as a permanent guest, of course, he does not really do so.

**Q. 5. Why does Mrs. Pumphrey think the dog's recovery is 'A Triumph of surgery' ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** Tricki was in a miserable condition when he was hospitalized. Mrs. Pumphrey sees the transformation of the fat listless dog and feels grateful to the doctor. She thinks that it was a 'triumph of surgery' In fact, as we know, no surgery was involved in the dog's treatment.

**Q. 6. What kind of a person, do you think, the narrator, veterinary surgeon is ? Would you say he is tactful as well as full of common sense ?**

**Ans.** Dr. James Harriot is no doubt, a famous veterinarian, He is sensible and practical. He sees the dog Tricki as a challenge to his professional knowledge and is worried about him. He knows that the dog does not need any medicines but a proper diet and sufficient exercise. He uses his veterinary knowledge in choosing the right food for him, not sweets and wines and brandy. He tactfully stops the mistress, Mrs. Pumphrey from interfering into the treatment by putting the dog in the hospital.

**Q. 7. Do you think Tricki was happy to go home? What do you think will happen now?**

**Ans.** Tricki loves his mistress and the household. He leaped and sailed into Mrs. Pumphrey's lap as soon as he saw her so he was definitely happy to go home now there are



two possibilities. At home, he may again start eating all the unhealthy food that his mistress gives him and come unhealthy but I think he is cured of his greed for food by the doctor's treatment and will remain an energetic, playful dog.

**Q. 8. How did the narrator cure tricky ?** (M.P.2023)

**Ans.** The narrator cured tricky by simply stripping his diet and giving him regular exercise. The main cause of his illness was overfeeding.

**Q. 9. Do you think this is a real life episode or mere fiction ?**

**Or, Is it a mixture of both ?**

**Ans.** To me the third option seems to be the most logical. It could be a real incident in the life of a veterinarian to see a pampered dog having more than necessary comforts. There are people who love their pets too much but the incident has a lot of exaggeration which is what makes it an interesting story. Without it the story would lose its charm being a routine experience in the life of a vet.

**Q. 10. What was the only fault of 'Tricki' as diagnosed by Dr. Herriot ?**

**Ans.** Dr. Harriot knew that Mrs. Pumphrey was an overindulgent mistress and gave Tricki a lot of food. Tricki's fault was his excessive greed. This, with lack of exercise was the cause of the dog's illness and the doctor had a proper plan for the dog's recovery.

**Q. 11. What made Mrs. Pumphrey call the vet ?**

**Ans.** The poor condition of her dog's health made Mrs. Pumphrey call the doctor. Tricki, the dog, had become listless and fat. He would lie on the rug all time. He also refused to eat food and had bouts of vomiting. Mrs. Pumphrey called the vet so that her dog could get proper treatment.

**Q. 12. How did Mrs. Pumphrey react when she heard from the doctor that Tricki needed to be hospitalized for a fortnight?**

**Ans.** Mrs. Pumphrey was an overindulgent owner of the dog and loved Tricki very much. So, when the doctor advised her that the dog needed hospitalization for a fortnight she was very upset. She could not bear the thought of keeping away from Tricki for a fortnight. However, when the doctor said that it was absolutely necessary for his recovery she agreed.

**Q. 13. Describe the progress of Tricki at the hospital ?**

**Ans.** Tricki was actually suffering from over eating and lack of exercise. So, for two days the doctor gave him nothing to eat but a lot of water to drink. On the second day he started showing some interest for thing around. On the third day, he began to whimper. Then he was provided proper food. Gradually, he began to move about and play with other dogs and eat properly. Good food and exercise changed him into a lithe healthy dog in the fortnight.

**Q. 14. How did Mrs. Pumphery and her servants behave when Tricki was being taken away to hospital ?**

**Ans.** When the dog Tricki was being taken away to the hospital the whole household was a turmoil. The maids rushed in and out bringing Tricki's day-bed, night-bed, cushions, toys, food bowls for different meals, etc. The doctors car could not carry all these thing's. So he started the car. Mrs. Pumphrey gave a despairing cry, throwing an armful of coats through the windows. Everybody was in tears.

**Q. 15. How was Tricki accepted as a member of the pack by dogs ?**

**Ans.** When Tricki was ill the dogs ignored him but as his condition improved. He started taking interest in his surroundings. Joe, the greyhound and other dogs surrounded



him rolled him over playfully and inspected him. Tricki began to move with the pack. He ran and rolled with them. Thus, he was accepted and became a member of the pack of dogs.

**Q. 15. What excuses did Mrs. Pumphrey give for not following Dr. Harriot's advice? What were the consequences?**

**Ans.** Dr. Harriot had severely advised Mrs. Pumphrey to cut down on sweets and give the dog some exercise. Mrs. Pumphrey, who loved the dog to an excess did not follow the advice she said it was very difficult for her. The result was that the dog's condition got worse and she had to be put into hospital.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Give a brief character sketch of Mrs. Pumphrey.**

**Ans.** From the story it is clear that Mrs. Pumphrey is a very rich lady. She has a large number of servants and maids. Tricki her dog seems to be nucleus of her attention, due to overeating the dog becomes very fat and listless. She thinks that the dog is suffering from malnutrition and starts giving him malt, cod-liver oil and a bowl of horlicks at night, she ignores the doctor's advice of cutting down on sweets and giving the dog enough exercise. Tricki's fault was his greed for food. This made things worse for the dog. He lost appetite and had bouts of vomiting.

Mrs. Pumphrey is impractical but she loves the dog very much the dog has beds, cushions, toys and food bowls like a pampered rich mans child when the dog is hospitalized, she constantly enquires about his health and thanks the doctor profusely for saving his life. If she had been a bit more practical the dog might not have suffered so much.

So we can conclude that she is loving, overindulgent and impractical lady.

**Q. 2. 'Excess of everything is bad'. Explain on the basis of Mrs. Pumphrey's love for Tricki.**

**Or, Mrs. Pumphrey, the overindulgent mistress of Tricki pampers him like a spoilt child. Comment.**

**Ans.** The proverb 'Excess of everything is bad' means that even good things taken or done in excess may produce an adverse effect. Loving one's dog is natural, taking care of a pet is also natural but in case of Tricki this is done in excess. The bodily needs of a dog are not the same as that of a human child but Mrs. Pumphrey, the overindulgent mistress of Tricki does not think so. The dog has a greed for food and Mrs. Pumphrey supplies it to him in excess. She does not realize that over-eating is harmful to the dog. Lack of exercise makes the problem more complicated. Thus, Mrs. Pumphrey's love makes the dog so sick that he has to be put in a hospital under Dr. Harriot's care. The doctor, a sensible man, cures dog by giving him proper food and lots of exercise.

**Q. 3. Dr. James Harriot was not only a competent vet but also a sensible man. His practical approach helped in the rapid recovery of Tricki. Comment.**

**Or, How did Tricki regain his health under Dr. Harriots care?**

**Ans.** Dr. Harriot, who was a competent vet understood that Tricki's condition was the result of his excessive love for food. As a result, he had become very fat and listless. He advised Mrs. Pumphrey to keep Tricki on a strict diet and cut down on sweets. Mrs. Pumphrey did not do so and the dog's condition worsened. He was then hospitalized. The doctor knew the case. He gave the dog no special medicine. He was not given food for two days but plenty of water. On the third day, the dog showed signs of recovery from then, he recovered rapidly. He began to run about with other dogs and played with them. This gave him ample exercise. In a fortnight he was transformed to a hard-muscled dog. Mrs. Pumphrey thanked the doctor and called the feat 'a triumph of surgery'. In fact, it was a triumph of common sense over overindulgent love.



**Q. 9. How did Anil earn a substantial amount of money ?**

**Ans.** As we know, Anil was a writer who wrote for magazines and made money by fits and starts. Then he was able to sell a book to a publisher and earned a substantial amount at one go. He bought the bundle of 50 rupee notes home and Hari Singh thought that his golden chance had come.

**Q. 10. Did Hari like working for Anil ? Give reason in support of your answer ?**

**Ans.** Hari liked working for Anil. He made tea in the morning and went to buy the day's supplies. He would generally make a profit of a rupee in this way. Also Anil taught him to cook and write. He was happy and there was always the chance of stealing some money.

**Q. 11. State the events that took place on the night of the theft.**

**Ans.** Anil had earned Rs. 600/- by selling a book to a publisher. He put the notes under the mattress. Hari Singh stole the money and went to the railway station to catch the Lucknow express. He missed the train and moved about. Then, it began to rain and he took shelter under the tower. Then he began to think about education and a better future. This forced him to come back and put the money back.

**Q. 12. Why was it difficult for Hari Singh to rob Anil ?**

**Ans.** It was difficult for Hari Singh to rob Anil because Anil was a kind, trusting person. He was also a careless person and Hari thought, he might not even notice the theft. This, in his views, took the pleasure out of the work. However, the obvious reason seems to be that his conscience did not allow him to rob a benefactor.

**Q. 13. Why did Hari Singh put the money back under the mattress ?**

**Ans.** When Hari Singh was wondering about the thought that with the money could live like an oil-rich Arab for a week or two. Then he thought of education, of being able to read and write. He knew that education could completely change his life, make him a rich, respectable man. The thought forced him to go back and put the money under the mattress.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Give a character sketch of Hari Singh, the thief. What change can be seen in his character at the end of the story ?**

**Ans.** Hari Singh is a boy of fifteen but an experienced and successful thief. He is quite clever and changes his name every month to avoid being caught by police. His method is simple. He gets employed in a household, looks for a chance to steal and run away. He impressed Anil favourably and is employed by him. Though his cooking is terrible he persuades Anil to keep him. He makes money, in buying the daily needs.

He steals the money that Anil earns by selling a book and runs away. Then he began to think that the money will last him only for a week or two. This forces him to return the money so that he could live with Anil and learn to write. This will help him progress in life. Thus, the thief's thinking changes and he puts the money back under the mattress. Anil does not know about the stealing but he never mentions it. He behaves as if nothing has happened. Thus, the thief Hari Singh is changed.

**Q. 2. Write a character sketch of Anil.**

**Ans.** Anil is a lean young man of 25 who is a struggling writer. He sells his writings to publishers and gets money by fits and starts. When he has money, he spends it lavishly. He borrows when he needs money. This shows that he is not a practical person.

He takes Hari Singh on though he can hardly pay him. This shows his kindness and naivety. He teaches him not only to cook but also to write. He even forgives Hari Singh his stealing of the money. He does not hand him over to police. Thus, he helps the thief Hari



Singh to reform and become a better man. So, we can say that he is a kind and considerate man. Hari Singh says, himself "He was the most trusting men I had ever met."

**Q. 3. Why did the thief Hari Singh make friends with Anil ? When did he get a chance to steal money ? Why did he come back and put Anil's money back ?**

**Ans.** The thief Hari Singh felt that Anil was a good target for him, He could easily rob him. So, he requested Anil to take him on as a servant. Anil could not pay him and he agreed to work without regular payment. Anil made money by selling his writings to publishers. Once, he came home with a bundle of notes saying that he had sold a book to a publisher. He put the notes under the mattress. Anil saw his chance and stole the money. He went to station to catch Lucknow Express. He missed the train and wandered here and there. Then, he thought of education. He felt that, if he ran away, he would always be a thief. He would lose the chance of getting education and a better future. So, he came back and put the money back silently. Anil too forgave him though he was aware of the theft.

### 3. THE MIDNIGHT VISITOR

— Robert Arthur

#### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Why had Fowler wanted to meet Ausable ?**

**Ans.** Fowler had a romantic concept about spying and secret agents. Since, Ausable was a secret agent, he wanted to meet him to cover him up for a wristing.

**Q. 2. Describe Fowler's reaction after entering Ausable's hotel room ?**

**Ans.** Fowler wishes to meet a detective. He was disappointed to see him as Ausable wasn't looking like a detective.

**Q. 3. Why did Max's face turn black with anger ? What did he want Ausable to do ?**

**Ans.** Max turned black with anger because she thought that his plan of extracting documents had failed when he heard the knocking on the door. He wanted Ausable to ask the police to go away.

**Q. 4. Why did Ausable frame the story of the balcony ?**

**Ans.** Ausable framed the story of the balcony to counter the use of the pistol by the rival secret agent Max to threaten him.

**Q. 5. Who actually had knocked at the door of Ausable's room ? Why did he come there ?**

**Ans.** Henry, the waiter was knocking at the door in hotel. Infact, Ausable had ordered for a bottle of wine and two glasses. Henry had come there to serve the order.

**Q. 6. How did Ausable get rid of Max ?**

(M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Ausable made a story of a balcony under his window and he convinced max about the balcony. And thus, when someone knocked at the door, Max fearing it to be the police, jumped out of the window and died.

#### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a character sketch of Ausable.**

**Or, What qualities are essential to be a good detective ? Explain on the basis of Ausable's character.**

**Ans.** At first Ausable does not impress us. He is very, very fat and not agile. He passes the evening in a music hall. All very dull. But his real qualities are seen in action. He has a very quick mind and we see it working in his dealing with Max. He shows no fear or uneasiness. He cooks up the story of the balcony and tells it so convincingly that Max, who is also a detective is completely fooled. Again, when the door is knocked, he tells that he had in asked the police for some extra protection for the papers. He makes it sound real and forces max to go through the window. Thus, he gets rid of the unwanted character in the story.



So, we can say that Ausable may not look much like a film-detective, he is really good at his work. Also we can see that only physical strength is not enough for a good detective. He must also have a sharp mind. He should be ready to face the challenge. Without losing his calm. Fowler also is forced to change his opinion about Ausable after the incident.

**Q. 2. Who was Max ? Why did he enter Ausable's room ? Did he succeed in his plan ?**

**Ans.** Max was a secret agent. He had information that Ausable was getting a secret report about certain new missiles. He wanted to get that report. He entered Ausable's room to get that report by force. He used a passkey to enter. When Ausable entered the room with Fowler Max forced him to sit at gunpoint. Then Ausable enquired if he had entered through the balcony. He gave a vivid description and made Max believe that the balcony did exist and could be used to get away. The balcony was purely a thing of fiction. When the door was knocked Ausable told him that he had requested the police to check on him and now they had come. Max was confused and unnerved. He jumped out of the window and fell in the street, dead. Thus, Ausable turned the tables on him and got rid of the enemy agent Max. Max failed because he had not made a study of the building. He proved gullible.

**Q. 3. What information did Ausable give about the fictitious balcony ? Why did he do so ?**

**Ans.** Ausable gave a detailed description of the balcony. He said that the room was part of a bigger house. It was connected with other rooms. The balcony was a way to reach the other rooms. He also told that the balcony was a nuisance to him and it was the second time in a month that some one had entered the room through the balcony. The hotel management had done nothing to block it.

The idea was to convince Max that a balcony did exist just outside the window. He had ordered a drink and knew that it would soon arrive. When the door was knocked, he coolly added that the police had arrived. This unnerved Max and he thought it best to go to the balcony. He jumped out of the room through the window, ofcourse, there was no balcony. He fell directly on the road and died. Thus, Ausable with the story of the imaginary balcony got rid of Max, an enemy agent. This shows that he was a quick thinker.

## 4. A QUESTION OF TRUST

— Victor Canning

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What did Horace Danby hear from the doorway ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby heard a voice from the doorway. It was the voice of a lady.

**Q. 2. Was Horace Danby a typical thief ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby was not a typical thief. He made locks and was successful in his business. He loved rare and expensive books. To purchase these books he used to rob only one safe every year.

**Q. 3. What advice did the lady give Horace Danby about his hay fever ?**

**Ans.** The lady advised Horace that he could get rid of his disease if he found out which plant had given him the disease.

**Q. 4. Did Horace Danby get the Jewells from the Grange Safe ? Then why did the police arrest him ?**

**Ans.** No, Horace's attempts to get the jewells from the Grange Safe was unsuccessful. The police arrested him because they found his finger prints on the safe.

**Q. 5. Why was it not difficult for Horace to open the safe ?**

**Ans.** It was not difficult for Horace to open the safe because he was a perfect and experienced Locksmith. He had already collected all the informations about the safe before entering the house.

**Q. 6. What does the author tell us about Horace Danby's life ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby was unmarried and fifty year old and lived with a housekeeper who bothered about his health.

**Q. 7. What does Horace Danby like to collect ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby likes to collect rare and expensive books.

**Q. 8. Why does he steal every year ?**

**Ans.** He stole every year so that he could buy the rare and expensive books that he loved to collect.

**Q. 9. Who is the real culprit in the story ?**

**Ans.** The real culprit is the woman who pretended to be a member of the family living at Shotover Grange.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Horace Danby is a peculiar character'. How ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby runs an honest lock-making business but has a passion for rare and expensive books. He robs one safe in a year just to be able to buy these books. All these qualities make him a peculiar person but it also adds to the charm of the story.

**Q. 2. What was Danby's passion ? How did he manage to fulfill it ?**

**Ans.** Horace Danby's passion was to collect rare and expensive books. These books he could not buy from his honest income is lock-making. He robbed a safe every year and bought the books using the money to buy the books secretly though an agent.

**Q. 3. How did the red-dressed lady deceive Horace Danby ?**

**Ans.** The lady was quite charming. She behaved with the dog 'sherry' familiarly. She told Danby a plausible story about how she had kept the jewels in the safe and had forgotten the number. Also Danby was nervous on being found out and he agreed to do what the lady asked.

## 5. FOOTPRINTS WITHOUT FEET

— H.G Wells

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How did the invisible man become visible ?**

**Ans.** The man remained invisible when he had no clothes on. He became visible when he put on his clothes. He went inside a big London store to keep himself warm. At night he put on clothes taken from the store. He overslept there and, in the morning was seen by the workers at the store.

**Q. 2. Why was he wandering in the streets ?**

**Ans.** Griffin had set fire to his landlord's house. To escape, he had to remove all his clothes. Just now, he was homeless and without money. So, he was wandering in the streets.

**Q. 3. Why does Mrs. Hall find the scientist eccentric ?** (M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** Mrs. Hall finds the scientist eccentric because, as a host, she wants to be friendly to him but he simply says that he wants complete solitude and does not wish to be disturbed in his work. He added that an accident had affected his face.

**Q. 4. How did Griffin become invisible ?** (M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Griffin discovered a drug that could make his body transparent as a sheet of a glass. He just swallowed the drug and became invisible.



**Q. 5. What curious episode occurs in the study ?**

**Ans.** A clergyman and his wife hear some noise in the study. They go downstairs and hear the chink of money being taken from the desk. The clergyman, with a poker in his hand opens the door and asks the intruder to surrender but he sees no one. They look everywhere but can't find anybody. Still, the money was taken.

**Q. 6. What other extra-ordinary things happen at the inn ?** (M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** When the landlady Mrs. Hall sees the scientist's door open they think that it is a good chance to find out something about the strange guest. They find the clothes and bandage lying on the floor. Then Mrs. Hall hears a sniff. A hat dashes self into her face. The bedroom chair charges at her feet. Finally, it pushes them both out. Mrs. Hall is convinced that the room haunted by spirits. The neighbours also think that the trouble is caused by witchcraft.

**Q. 7. 'Griffin was rather a lawless person.' comment.**

**Ans.** Griffin definitely was not a law-abiding peace-loving scientist. He set on fire his landlord's house. He took clothes from the store and ate at the restaurant without paying. He stole money from the shopkeeper of theatrical items. Again, when the money was spent, he stole from the clergyman's house. He struck the constable down to make his get away.

**Q. 8. How would you assess Griffin as a scientist ?**

**Ans.** Griffin was no doubt a brilliant scientist. He must have put in a lot of work to discover the formula of making a human body transparent. The invention could be useful for the welfare of people. Most scientific inventions have helped change the human life to make it better. However, he tried to misuse his invention and his brilliance was wasted.

**Q. 9. Describe Griffin's discovery. How did he make it successful ?**

**Ans.** Griffin was a brilliant scientist. He found out how the human body could be made transparent. He made many experiments. He swallowed some rare drugs he had experimented with and his body became transparent.

**Q. 10. Why did Griffin set fire to the house of the landlord ? How did he escape ?**

**Ans.** Griffin's landlord did not like his ways and wanted to eject him. Griffin got angry and set fire to the house. He had to go out without clothes to remain invisible. Also, he did not have any money. It was a difficult position for him.

**Q. 11. Why did Griffin go to Drury Lane ? What did he do there ?**

**Ans.** Griffin went to Drury Lane to get some theatrical items. He needed clothes. He could hide his transparent body with clothes but he had to do something for his face. He bandaged his forehead, put a false nose and wore dark glasser. He also attacked the shopkeeper and robbed him of his money.

**Q. 12. 'Three extraordinary things happened in the room.' What were they ?**

**Ans.** First Mrs. Hall heard a sniff close to her ear. Then the hat on the bed post leapt up and hit her in the face. Then the bed room chair began to move and flew at Mrs. Hall. She was sure there was some spirit in the room.

**Q. 13. What happened to Jaffers when he tried to catch the invisible man ?**

**Ans.** After removing his clothes, Griffin hand become invisible. The constable found himself fighting an invisible man. The invisible man hit him from all sides but the constable could not get him. He fell down, unconscious.

**Q. 14. Why did Griffin have to resort to burglary at the house of a clergyman ?**

**Ans.** Griffin had some money robbed from a shopkeeper. He lived in an inn and had to pay the rent. When the money was spent Griffin was desperate. So, early in the morning he entered the clergyman's house and stole money from his table. He was not wearing any clothes and was invisible.

**Q. 15. Why were the two boys in London surprised and fascinated ?**

**Ans.** The two boys were surprised and fascinated when they saw muddy footprints on the road. They could not see anyone. Thus, they were footprints without feet. It puzzled them.



**Q. 16. How did the visible man become invisible? What did he do then?**

**Ans.** Griffin got angry at the constant questioning by Mrs. Hall. He took off his bandages, false nose and side whiskers. Thus, he became a headless man. When the constable came to arrest him, he took off all the clothes and became invisible. He knocked Jeffers unconscious and escaped.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a character sketch of Griffin.**

**Or, Write your impression of Griffin.**

**Ans.** Griffin is, no doubt, a brilliant scientist. His discovery about invisibility is a proof of this but his negative, anti-social qualities dominate his character. He set fire to the house of his landlord. He, illegally stayed in a London store. Then, he stole things from a shop in Drury Lane and robbed the shopkeeper, he behaved rudely with Mrs. Hall. He robbed the clergyman's house too. When Jeffers came to arrest him, he attacked him also. No doubt, his invisibility was of great use to him but he used it only for unlawful acts. So, though, he is a great scientist he cannot be praised. He could have used his scientific knowledge to help people which he didn't. He is a negative character a villain.

**Q. 2. How did Griffin's invisibility come to his help whenever he was in a tight corner?**

**Or, How did Griffin use his invisibility for his unlawful acts?**

**Ans.** First, Griffin used his invisibility to escape from his landlord whose house he had set fire to. It helped him in entering a London store for warmth. He also ate and slept there. On being discovered in the morning he again used his invisibility. He robbed a theatre-costume shop to get a make-up for his head. When his stolen money was spent he robbed a clergyman to get money. Finally, by being invisible he saved himself from being arrested by Jeffers. It makes us sad to see how a brilliant-scientist misused his talent in petty crime. He could have made more discoveries to help mankind. Thus, he proved himself to be a villain and not a hero.

## 6. THE MAKING OF A SCIENTIST

— Robert W. Peterson

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How did Richard Ebright's mother help him to become a scientist?**

**Ans.** His mother encouraged his interest in learning. She was his only childhood friend and companion. She took him on trips, bought him scientific equipments and helped him in many ways. She also supported his collecting butterflies.

**Q. 2. What experiments and projects does he then undertake?**

**Ans.** For his eight grade project, he tried to find the cause of a viral disease that kills nearly all monarch caterpillars every few years. Though he could not reach any conclusion, yet he showed the experiment and won.

**Q. 3. How did a book become a turning point in Richard's life?**

**Ans.** Richard's mother was a caring lady and his companion. She gave him a book called, "The travels of Monarch X". It described the migration of monarch butterflies to Central America. It opened a new world of science for Richard and gave him ideas of how science works.



**Q. 4. How did his (Ebright) mother help him ?**

**Ans.** Ebright's mother was a source of inspiration for him. She kept him busy trying to find new things. She took him on trips and bought him instruments like telescopes, microscopes, cameras, mounting materials and other equipment. She encouraged him in his work.

**Q. 5. What lesson does Ebright learn when he does not win anything at a science fair ?**

**Ans.** Ebright did not get any prize when he participated in the science fair at first time. His entry was slides of frog tissue which he showed under a microscope. He found that those who won had really done some experiments and not put just a display. He learnt that he must perform experiments.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. How did a book become a turning point in Richard's life ?**

**Ans.** Richard's mother was a caring lady and his companion. She gave him a book called "The travels of Monarch X". It described the migration of monarch butterflies to Central America. It opened a new world of science for Richard and gave him ideas of how science works.

**Q. 2. How did his (Ebright) mother help him ?**

**Ans.** Ebright's mother was a source of inspiration for him. She kept him busy trying to find new things. She took him on trips and bought him instruments like telescopes, microscopes, cameras, mounting materials and other equipment. She encouraged him in his work.

**Q. 3. What lesson does Ebright learn when he does not win anything at a science fair ?**

**Ans.** Ebright did not get any prize when he participated in the science fair at first time. His entry was slides of frog tissue which he showed under a microscope. He found that those who won had really done some experiments and not put just a display. He learnt that he must perform experiments.

**Q. 4. Write a character sketch of Richard Ebright.**

**Or, Write about Richard Ebright's interests and achievements.**

**Ans.** The lesson describes Richard as a brilliant scientist. He has a sharp mind, curiosity and the will to win. He worked very hard to understand things. This led to his many important discoveries. In his second grade he had collected all the varieties of butterflies in his area. The book 'Travels of Monarch X' opened his mind to the wonderful world of science. In one of his projects he tried to find an answer to the question, "Why viceroy butterflies copied monarch butterflies. His work on DNA is also of vital importance.

His mother had a great influence on him. She was his guide and companion. But he was not just a scientist. He was an active member of debating groups and as powerful public speaker. He was a good photographer and canoeist. Above all, he had a competitive spirit which forced him to do his best. He was a complete personality.

**Q. 5. How did Ebright's mother help him becoming a scientist ?**

**Or, What type of relationship did Ebright have with his mother ?**

**Ans.** It is said that there is always a woman behind a successful man. This woman in the case of Ebright was his mother. When Ebright was in class three his father died. Ebright's mother raised him as a single parent. They spent all of their free time together. When he had nothing to do she found something more for him to learn. She gave him a book 'The travels of Monarch X' which opened the world of science to Richard. She wrote to Dr. Urquhart and Richard became a part of his project on migration of butterflies. She also took him to trips and bought him instruments like telescopes, microscopes, cameras and mounting materials. In this way she was always supportive to him. She recognized his talents and gave him opportunities to improve them. Without her guidance, Richard might not have been a great scientist.



## 7. THE NECKLACE

— Guy de Maupassant

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. What kind of a person is Madam Loisel ? Why is she always unhappy ?**

**Ans.** Mme. Loisel is a pretty young woman. She was married to a petty clerk in the office of Board of Education. She was not happy with her mean position in society and poverty and always dreamt of luxuries, a big house, marvellous dishes and jewellery. This caused her a lot of misery.

**Q. 2. What kind of person is her husband ?**

**Ans.** Mr. Loisel who is a petty clerk is a practical person and satisfied with his life. He is a caring person and loves his wife. To please her, he gives her his savings to buy a dress. He has a strong character which is seen in his struggle to repay the debt but he never blames Matilda for losing the necklace.

**Q. 3. What fresh problem now disturbs Mme. Loisel ?**

**Ans.** When the dress is ready, Matilda has another problem. Now, she needs some jewellery because, she feels, she would look very poor without suitable jewels.

**Q. 4. How is the problem solved ?**

**Ans.** Loisel suggests that she should borrow some jewellery from her friend Madam Forestier. Madam Forestier willingly agreed to give her any jewellery she wanted. Matilda borrowed a diamond necklace from her and it solved.

**Q. 5. What do Matilda and Mme. do next ?**

**Ans.** The diamond necklace that Matilda had borrowed from Mme. Forestier was lost. They looked for the necklace everywhere. Loisel went and searched for it. He went to police and cab offices. He also put an advertisement in the papers offering a prize but the necklace was not found.

**Q. 6. How do they replace the necklace ?**

(M.P. 2022)

**Ans.** They had to replace the necklace. They found an exact duplicate of the necklace in a shop. It cost 36000 francs. Loisel had 18000 francs left by his father. They had to borrow the rest of the money at high rate of interest from different sources. This was a bolt from the blue and completely changed the life of the couple.

**Q. 7. The course of the Loisels' life changed due to the necklace comment.**

(M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Matilda borrowed the necklace from Mrs. Forestier and wore it to the ball. She was the prettiest woman there and got lots of appreciation. She was very happy. However, at home she found that she had lost the necklace. This was a bolt from the blue. Loisel went about in search of the necklace but it was not found. They had to replace the necklace which cost them 36000 francs. They had to borrow money. They faced a lot of difficulties in repaying the money and their life was changed forever.

**Q. 8. What was the cause of Matilda's ruin ? How could she have avoided it ?**

**Ans.** The loss of the necklace was the cause of Matilda's ruin. She could have avoided it if she had not borrowed the necklace in the first place. Again, she did not tell Mrs. Forestier about the loss. If she had done that she would have found that it was not a real diamond necklace. This would have saved her all the misery.

**Q. 9. What would have happened to Matilda if she had confessed to her friend that she had lost her necklace ?**

**Ans.** If Matilda had confessed to Madam Forestier about the loss of the necklace. She could have saved herself from a lot of misery. It was a necklace of false diamonds and they



could have easily paid the cost. She suffered just because she did not confess the truth to Madam Forestier.

**Q. 10. What did Matilda throw the invitation angrily ?**

**Ans.** Loisel had brought the invitation thinking that Matilda would be happy to attend the party. She threw the invitation angrily upon the table because she had no proper party wear for the ball. Loisel had to give her 400 Francs to get a new dress.

**Q. 11. How did Matilda feel at the ball ?**

**Ans.** Matilda was a grand success at the ball. She was the prettiest woman at the party. She was elegant and graceful. She danced with great zeal. All the men noticed her, asked her name and wanted to be introduced to her.

**Q. 12. Why did Matilda leave the ball in hurry ? What does it tell us about her character.**

**Ans.** Matilda left the ball in a hurry because she did not want the rich ladies to see the poor looks of her wrap. This shows that she wanted to keep up her appearance. She was not ready to accept the fact that she was the wife of a poor clerk. She lived in her own world of dreams.

**Q. 13. How did Mrs. Loisel now know the life of necessity ?**

**Ans.** To repay the debt the Loisel's had to give up many comforts. They sent away the maid and rented some rooms in the attic she learnt to do all the odious kitchen work. She took down the refuse to the street. She haggled with the merchants for small amounts. Her clothes lost their elegance and she looked old.

**Q. 14. Why did Mme. Forestier not recognise Matilda ? How did both the ladies look ?**

**Ans.** While taking a walk in the champs- Elysees, Matilda saw Mrs. Forestier. She was walking with her child and too still looked young and pretty. when she called her familiarly, Mme. Forestier was surprised. She could not recognize her friend who looked old and shabbily dressed. The labour of repaying of the debt had completely changed her.

**Q. 15. How had the sacrifice of the Loisel's been in vain ?**

**Ans.** The Loisels replaced Mrs. Forestier's lost necklace which cost them thirty six thousand francs. It took them ten years to repay the debt and completely changed their lives. However, the sacrifice was in vain because the necklace was of false diamonds and cost only about five hundred francs. If they had talked to Mrs. Forestiers, they could have avoided all the troubles.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a character sketch of Matilda.**

**Or, Describe how Matilda's ambitions were the cause of her troubles ?**

**Ans.** Matilda was a beautiful young lady born in a poor family and married to a petty clerk. She was ambitious and dreamy and felt that she deserved all the comforts in life because of her beauty. Her poor circumstances made her unhappy.

She borrowed a diamond necklace from her friend so that she could look beautiful at the ball. The loss of the necklace completely changes their lives. This changed the dreamy young Matilda into a strong woman. She joined hands with her husband in repaying the debt and lived the arduous life of the poor.

She lacked humility. If she had gone Mme. Forestier and told her about the loss of the necklace she could have avoided a lot of suffering to herself and her husband.

So, we see Matilda as a dreamy young girl and also as a heroine in her struggle with poverty.



**Q. 2. How did the Loiseles repay the debt ?**

**Or, What troubles did the Loiseles face after the loss of the necklace ?**

**Ans.** On returning from the ball Matilda found that she had lost the necklace. Poor Loisel went out immediately to look for it. He contacted the police, the office of the cab-companies and advertised in the newspapers but in vain. So, they found an exact duplicate and bought it for thirty six thousand francs. The necklace was returned. To repay the debt they sent away the maid and rented a cheaper house. Loisel worked in the evenings to earn more. Matilda worked in the kitchen and did all the household chores herself. She became a strong, hard woman of the poor household. Her youth and elegance were gone. She was now a rough woman and looked quite old. This hard life continued for ten years and finally the debt was paid off. Thus, Matilda's love for jewellery, her wish to look beautiful completely changed her life.

## 8. BHOLI

— K.A. Abbas

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Why is Bholi's father worried about her ?**

**Ans.** Bholi's father is worried about her because she has neither good looks nor is she intelligent. He is worried that it would be difficult to find a suitable match for her. No one will like to marry an ugly girl.

**Q. 2. For what unusual reasons is Bholi sent to school ?**

**Ans.** When the school was opened in the village the Tehsildar asked Ramlal, Bholi's father to send her to school to set an example for others. Ramlal, being a Numberdar had to obey the Tehsildar. The mother also reluctantly agreed.

**Q. 3. Does Bholi enjoy her first day at school ?**

**Ans.** Bholi had never seen a school, but she was glad to see many girls of her own age there. She hoped that one of them might become her friend. She found the teacher kind hearted and her fear was gone.

**Q. 4. Does she find her teacher different from the people at home ?**

**Ans.** The teacher was definitely different from the people at home who laughed at her. She treated Bholi with kindness and encouraged her to learn. This kind of behaviour helped Bholi to learn.

**Q. 5. Why do Bholi's parents accept Bishambhar's proposal ?**

**Ans.** Bholi's parents accept Bishambhar's proposal because he was a rich man and did not ask for a dowry. Also, they felt that Bholi could not get a better husband because of her ugliness.

**Q. 6. Why does the marriage not take place ?**

**Ans.** When the bridegroom sees Bholi's face, he demands five thousand rupees as dowry. Ramlal does pay the money but Bholi refuses to marry a mean greedy person like Bishambhar.

**Q. 7. Bholi had many apprehensions about going to school. What made her feel that she was going to a better place than her home ?**

**Ans.** Bholi saw many girls of her own age at the school, she hoped that she may get a friend there. She also found the teacher kind and sympathetic. This removed her apprehensions and she felt that school was a better place than her home.

**Q. 8. How did Bholi's teacher play an important role in changing the course of her life ?**

**Ans.** Bholi used to stammer and so, was reluctant to speak. The teacher treated her kindly and encouraged her. She taught Bholi to read and write and made her independent.



Under her guidance Bholi developed confidence. The confidence is seen in her refusal to marry Bishambhar.

**Q. 9. Why did Bholi at first agree to an unequal match ? Why did she later reject the marriage ? What does it tell about her ?**

**Ans.** Bholi agreed to an unequal match at first because of her father's honour. She rejected the marriage when she found that Bishambhar was a mean, greedy fellow. This shows that Bholi was now not a dumb cow. She was a determined girl and she had got determination from education. She was not Bholi but Sulekha now.

**Q. 10. Bholi's real name is Sulekha. We are told this right at the beginning. But only in the last but one paragraph of the story is Bholi called Sulekha again. Why do you think she is called Sulekha at that point in the story ?**

**Ans.** Bholi is called Sulekha which is her real name, in the last but one paragraph only. Bholi was a simpleton because she had a brain injury and her beauty was destroyed by pock-marks. Education changes her and develops her personality which is seen by her refusal to marry a greedy, mean person. At that moment Bholi changes into Sulekha a determined, educated girl.

**Q. 11. Why was Sulekha called Bholi - the simpleton ?**

**Ans.** When she was ten months old Sulekha fell off the cot. A part of her brain was damaged. She learn speaking when she was five. Other daughters of Ramlal were healthy and good-looking. Also, her face got disfigured due to small-pox. Everyone made fun of Bholi and she became an introvert.

**Q. 12. What preparations were made for sending Bholi to school ? When did she begin to think that school was a better place than her home ?**

**Ans.** Numberdar Ramlal did not want the teachers to have a bad image of the family. So Bholi was given a clean dress and properly bathed. Oil was rubbed into her dry matted hair. Thus, Bholi began to feel that she was going to better place than her home.

**Q. 13. How did the teacher help Bholi to pronounce her name fully and clearly ?**

**Ans.** The teacher asked Bholi her name. She could only stammer 'Bho'.... and began to weep. The girls began to laugh but the teacher comforted her. She failed in second time also. The teacher encouraged her and she finally said, 'Bh - Bh - Bholi'. The teacher patted her on her success.

**Q. 14. Bholi was fascinated by the walls of her class room. Why ?**

**Ans.** The walls of the classroom had bright and colourful pictures of animals like a horse, a goat, a parrot and a cow. They looked exactly like the real animals in the village. The beautiful pictures fascinated her.

**Q. 15. What filled Bholi, a dumb cow with a new hope ?**

**Ans.** Bholi had a kind teacher. Her first day at school brought hope in her. The teacher encouraged her and gave her a book. She helped Bholi gave confidence about herself and courage. The new hope was really education.

**Q. 16. Bholi was a neglected child. Explain.**

**Ans.** Bholi had a brain injury. Her face was made ugly by pock-marks, she stammered. The Numberdar had seven children. There were three sons and four daughters. So, Bholi was an unwanted burden, a neglected child. The parents were worried to think who would marry her.

**Q. 17. How did the teacher react to Bholi's wish expressed in the end ?**

**Ans.** The teacher had stood in a corner watching the drama. Bholi said that she would serve her parents in their old age and teach in the school. She turned to her teacher for her approval and the teacher said, "Yes Bholi, ofcourse". She was really proud of her student.



**Q. 18. Why did Ramlal first not like Bisha-mbhar's proposal ?**

**Ans.** Ramlal did not like Bishambhar's proposal at first because he was as old as him and had grown up children from his first wife. Also, he limped. He agreed because Bishambhar did not demand a dowry and also, because he was afraid he could not find a good match for Bholi.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Discuss the role of the teacher in moulding the personality of Bholi ?**

**Ans.** Bholi was a neglected child at home. Her parents also thought her to be a burden. She was sent to school only because the Tehsildar told Ramlal to do so. The school opened a new world to her. The teacher encouraged her and helped her to develop her personality. The Bholi, who could not speak properly, is seen to speak clearly. She speaks to safeguard his rights. She puts an end to her parents' worries. All this was possible because of the guidance and encouragement of the teacher. The teacher's qualities of love and sincerity are visible here. She is rightly proud of her student's achievement. In fact the transformation of Bholi into Sulekha is a measure of her devotion to duty.

**Q. 2. What made Bholi aware of her rights ?**

**Or, How did Bholi the simpleton become Sulekha a girl aware of her rights and the way to use them ?**

**Ans.** The story tells us about women at large. It talks about the value of education, about marriage and about the status of women in general. In the beginning, Bholi is a dumb cow, neglected even by her parents. Education completely transforms her. Her teacher is the catalyst of this changes who constantly advised, guided and encouraged Bholi. Bholi is now Sulekha, who understands what is right and what is wrong. She agrees to marry Bishambhar for the sake of her father's ijat (honour). But when Bishambar demands a dowry. She becomes a lioness. She refuses to marry the lame, mean greedy Bishambhar. She assures her parents not to worry about her and that she would serve them in their old age. She is thus an inspiration to all the girls.

**Q. 3. Bholi is a child different from others. This makes her an object of neglect and laughter. Elaborate.**

**Ans.** Bholi had a brain injury. She stammered while speaking. The pock-marks on her face also made her ugly. Her faltering speech is laughed at. So, she speaks little. Her parents, who have six other healthy children, neglect her. She is given worn out, old clothes. Even her mother calls her witless and a dumb cow. She is sent to school only to please the Tehsildar. Here the teacher brings about a change in Bholi by her kindness, encouragement and support. The story points out that differently able children should be treated with sympathy because they may have hidden talents.

## 9. THE BOOK THAT SAVED THE EARTH

— Claire Boiko

### Short Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Who tried to invade the earth in twenty-first century ?**

**Ans.** The Martians tried to invade the earth in the twenty-first century.

**Q. 2. The aliens in this play speak English. Do you think this is their language ?**

**What could be the language of the aliens ?**

**Ans.** The aliens speaking English is only imaginative. It is their language in the play because it is written in the author's language. The aliens are from the other planet. So definitely they cannot speak English.



**Q. 3. What guesses are made by Think-Tank about the books found on Earth ?**

**Ans.** The Martians had never seen anything like a book. The first guess of Think-Tank is that they may be sandwiches - a staple food of the Earthlings. Then he calls them (the books) communication device for eye - communication.

**Q. 4. Why was the Twentieth century called the 'Era of the Book' ?**

**Ans.** The twentieth century was called the 'Era of the Book' because there were books on all subjects from anteaters to Zulus and people could find answer to all their questions there.

### Long Answer Type Questions

**Q. 1. Write a character sketch of Great and Mighty Think-Tank.**

**Or, What type of Martian is Think-Tank ?**

**Ans.** Great and Mighty Think-Tank is the main character in the play. He is the commander-in chief and the ruler of Mars and her two moons. Nobody dares to disobey him. He is pompous and likes to be flattered. Noodle also flatters him and shows him respect. He makes his suggestions in humble language and manner. In the story, he proves his ignorance. He calls the books sandwiches, then communication devices. Noodle's wise suggestions save him from making mistakes. Finally, he completely misinterprets the harmless nursery-rhymes and escapes to Alpha Centauri. We see him as a foolish and pompous person. He is hasty in making decisions and they are always wrong. Though a fictional character, such people can be seen in real life too. When they get powers they surely abuse them.

**Q. 2. Compare and contrast the characters of Noodle and Think-Tank.**

**Or, How is Noodle different from Think-Tank ? Explain.**

**Ans.** Think-Tank is the ruler and commander-in-Chief of the Mars and its two moons. He likes to be addressed as Great and Mighty Think-Tank. He is fond of flattery and is pompous and rude. He thinks that his big round head is the sign of his great intelligence. However, his actions and decisions contradict it. He makes wrong guesses about books thinking that they are sandwiches. He makes decisions without thinking. His decision to leave Mars shows this.

On the other hand, Noodle is very courteous and obedient. He gives hints to Think-Tank about books which are proved correct. He is clever and wise. He never takes credit for his ideas. Think-Tank makes them his own. Later Noodle becomes the ruler. He is friendly with the Earthlings. He ever allows them to build a library in Marsopolis. He is peace loving and intelligent as a ruler.

**Q. 3. Describe, how a book saved the Earth.**

**Or, How did a book fail the plan of Martians to involve the Earth ?**

**Ans.** The crew of probe one landed in a library. They could not understand what the place was. There were lots of books and they thought it was some sort of storage space. The first guess of Think-Tank was that they were sandwiches - a staple food of the Earthlings, Sergeant Oop was forced to eat it and found it dry and tasteless. The other guess was communication-devices. With a dose of vitamins they were able to read them. The book was a book of nursery-rhymes. They read the rhymes of 'Mistress-Mary' and 'Hey Diddle Diddle' and misinterpreted the meaning. Then they read 'Humpty-Dumpty' and the picture there with a round head looked like that of Think-Tank. He thought that the Earthlings wanted to capture him. So, the invasion crew was ordered back and the Mighty 'Think-Tank' went to Alpha Centauri - a hundred million miles away. Thus, the book of nursery-rhymes saved the Earth from invasion.

**Q. 4. Noodle avoids offending Think-Tank but at the same time he corrects his mistakes. How does he manage to do that ?** (M.P. 2023)

**Ans.** Noodle is far wiser than Think-tank. He avoids offending him because Think-tank is the ruler of Mars. He thinks himself to be the most intelligent creature in the whole universe. So Noodle always takes care not to offend Think-tank's vanity and he makes his suggestions in a very polite manner. He calls them "Significant".

The last years board examination question paper is given for the knowledge of the students, in which maximum questions were asked from "PARIKSHA BODH".

## BOARD QUESTION PAPER

English (M) Class X

Time : 3 Hours

M.M. : 80

Instructions :  
(i) Read the questions carefully.  
(ii) Read the instructions given with the questions before attempting them.  
(iii) Marks of each question are indicated against them.

### Section-A

Q. 1. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below :  
Discipline must be enforced early in life. Discipline at home makes for the future greatness of a boy. It forms his character and makes him a fit citizen. The child who is allowed to have his own way becomes way-ward. The child who is allowed all sorts of excesses like running about in the sun, exposing himself to cold, eating wholesome things, as a result will fall ill frequently. A child, whose habits have been disciplined and who has been taught to rise early, attend to his lessons properly, take physical exercises at the proper time and avoid things that are injurious will grow up to be a useful member of the society. The spoilt child who has been allowed to run his own course will show vice in younger days. His parents would wish that he had not been born at all.

Questions :

1. What does discipline do for a child : 1
  - (a) Forms character and makes him a fit citizen
  - (b) Makes child dull
  - (c) Makes him strong
  - (d) Makes him way-ward.
2. What evils does a child pick up when he is allowed to do what he likes : 1
  - (a) Make himself happy
  - (b) Catch cold and fall ill
  - (c) Develop good habits
  - (d) Develop discipline in him.
3. What are good habits : 1
  - (a) Running in the sun
  - (b) Playing all the time
  - (c) Avoid things that are injurious
  - (d) Exposing himself to cold.
4. Give a suitable title : 1
  - (a) Importance of discipline
  - (b) Running
  - (c) Playing
  - (d) Physical Exercises.
5. What does 'Spoilt' mean : 1
  - (a) Greatness
  - (b) Destroyed
  - (c) Injurious
  - (d) Disciplined.

Q. 2. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below it :  
Garbage is a great environmental hazard. It comes from various sources used paper, tiffin packings, plastic bags, ice-cream wrappers, bottle caps, fallen leaves from trees and many more. Garbage makes the premises ugly, unkempt and breeds diseases. A lot of trash that is thrown away contains material that can be recycled



and reused such as paper, metals and glass which can be sent to the nearest recycling centre or disposed of to the junk dealer. It also contains organic matter such as leaves which can enrich soil fertility. A compost pit can be made a convenient location where the refuse can be placed with layers of soil and an occasional sprinkling of water. This would help decomposition to make valuable fertilizer. This would also prevent pollution that is usually caused by burning such organic waste.

Questions :

1. The main sources of Garbage in present conditions are : 1
  - (a) Household things
  - (b) Plots and other materials
  - (c) Water and liquid
  - (d) Cotton and clothes.
2. Leaves can enrich ..... fertility. 1
  - (a) Water
  - (b) Soil
  - (c) Air
  - (d) Human body.
3. The noun form of the word 'recycled' is : 1
  - (a) Recycle
  - (b) Recycling
  - (c) Recyclingly
  - (d) To recycled.
4. Give the meaning of the word 'nearest' : 1
  - (a) Closest
  - (b) Closely
  - (c) Far
  - (d) Far away.
5. Garbages can be reused by : 1
  - (a) Re-selling
  - (b) Recycling
  - (c) Repairing
  - (d) Renovating.

### Section-B

Q.3. Read the passage carefully and answer the following questions :

Games and sports are an important part of education. They help in the development of the physique and mind of the student. A sound body possesses a sound mind. If we are weak and sick, we can not have a fertile brain. Games and sports keep us healthy. They keep us active and make us smart. Mere bookish knowledge would not lead to be blended in a suitable proportion so that the students can have the best of them. They should not only develop the mind but also the body. Both are essential for a wholesome personality.

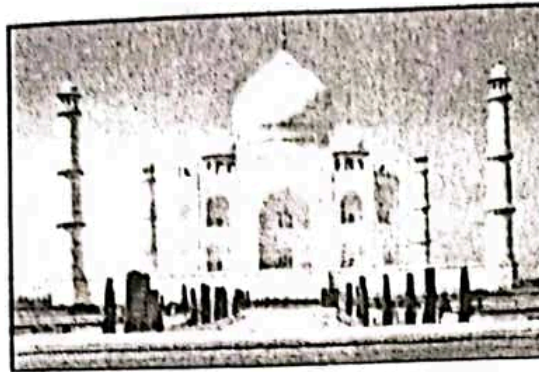
Games and sports have great value in student life. The foundation for a virtuous is laid in school. The sports arena teachers many things to the students give them discipline. It develops, their sportsman spirit, mental outlook, cheerful nature, strong physique. All these are important traits of successful life.

Questions :

- (i) On the basis of your reading of the above passage make a note on it using abbreviations if needed. 3
  - (ii) Give a suitable title to it. 1
- Q.4. You are Naveen Sharma studying in Govt. H. Sec. School, Rewa. Write an application to your Principal for issuing you books from the book bank. 4
- Or, Write a letter to your father telling him about your study.
- Q.5. Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 150 words : 5
- (i) Importance of Trees.
  - (ii) Value of games and sports.
  - (iii) Wonders of science.
  - (iv) My hobby.
  - (v) Any Indian festival.
- Or, Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "To Save Water".

Q. 6. Look at the visual input given below and produce a small description about it. Write in 75 words. 3

Ans.



### Section-C

Q. 7. (A) Fill in the blanks (any five) :

- (i) We ..... to serve our nation. (should/may/ought)  
 (ii) ..... I come in the classroom, Sir ? (can/may/need)  
 (iii) They ..... football in the evening. (plays/play/playing)  
 (iv) I have been here..... Monday. (for/since/too)  
 (v) I am not afraid ..... death. (on/of/off)  
 (vi) Look ..... you leap. (before/after/with)  
 (vii) He has ..... one rupee note. (a/an/the)

Ans. (i) ought, (ii) may, (iii) play, (iv) since, (v) of, (vi) before, (vii) a.

Q. 8. Do as directed (any five) :

- (i) They did their work. (Make negative)  
 (ii) My mother is cooking food. (Make interrogative)  
 (iii) Swimming is a good exercise. (Rewrite the sentence beginning with "It")  
 (iv) Preeti said, "Ishita is working." (Change the narration)  
 (v) The box is very heavy. He can not lift it. (Use 'so.....that' and rewrite)  
 (vi) If he takes a taxi, he will reach the station on time. (Use 'unless' in place of 'if')  
 (vii) She was drawing a picture. (Change the voice)

- Ans. (i) They did not do their work.  
 (ii) Is my mother cooking food ?  
 (iii) It is a good exercise to swim.  
 (iv) Preeti said that Ishita was working.  
 (v) The box is so heavy that he cannot lift it.  
 (vi) Unless he takes a taxi, he will not reach the station.  
 (vii) A picture was being drawn by her.

### Section-D

Q. 9. Answer the following Questions :

1. Lencho wrote a letter to ..... : 1  
 (a) Postmaster (b) God (c) His wife (d) Postman.  
 2. How many brothers did young seagull have : 1  
 (a) one (b) two (c) three (d) four.  
 3. Who was with the young seagull on the ledge : 1  
 (a) his mother (b) his father (c) his brother (d) He was alone.  
 4. The woman in the control centre looked at the narrator ..... : 1  
 (a) angrily (b) Strangely (c) happily (d) Joyfully.



5. Anne's best friend was ..... : 1  
 (a) her father (b) her grandmother  
 (c) her diary (d) her teacher.
6. Broad-making is popular in ..... : 1  
 (a) Mumbai (b) Delhi (c) Goa (d) Chennai.
- Q.10. (a) Read the following extract carefully and answer the questions given below it :  
 Wanda Petronski, most of the children in Room Thirteen didn't have names like that. They had names easy to say, like Thomas, Smith or Allen. There was only one boy named Bounce, Willie Bounce, and people thought that was funny, but not funny in the same way that Petronski was.  
 Wanda didn't have any friends. She came to school alone and went home alone. She always wore a faded blue dress that didn't hang right.  
 Questions :
1. Full name of bounce was : 1  
 (a) Thomas Bounce (b) Willie Bounce  
 (c) Allen Bounce (d) Wanda Bounce.
2. No. of rooms in which Wand study are : 1  
 (a) twelve (b) fourteen (c) six (d) thirteen
3. Who went to home alone ? 1  
 (a) Wanda (b) Peggy (c) Miss Mason (d) Maddie.
- (b) Read the following extract carefully and answer the questions given below it :  
 What is the boy now, who has lost his ball.  
 What, what is he to do ? I saw it go  
 Merrily bouncing, down the street, and then  
 Merrily over-there it is in the water  
 No use to say 'O there are other balls'.  
 Questions :
1. What has happened to the boy : 1  
 (a) The boy was amusing (b) The boy was happy  
 (c) The boy was sad (d) The boy was cheerful.
2. Which word means the same as "merrily" : 1  
 (a) Cheerlessly (b) Unhappily (c) Jovially (d) Miserably.
3. The boy has lost his ball, it is in the ..... : 1  
 (a) Market (b) Garden (c) House (d) Water.
- Q.11. Answer the following questions in about 30 words : (any six) 12  
 (i) Did Lencho try to find out who had sent the money to him ? Why/why not ?  
 (ii) Where did the ceremonies take place ? Can you name any public buildings in India that are made of sandstone ?  
 (iii) "The sight of the food maddened him." What does this suggest ? What compelled the young seagull to finally fly ?  
 (iv) What made the woman in the control centre look at the narrator strangely ?  
 (v) Anne says teachers are most unpredictable. Is Mr. Keesing unpredictable ? How ?  
 (vi) Who won the drawing contest ? What had the winner drawn ?  
 (vii) What did Mr. Petronski's letter say ?  
 (viii) What does a 'Jackfruit-like appearance' mean ?
- Q.12. Answer the following questions in 30 words : (any two) 4  
 (i) What is a 'dust of snow' ? What does the poet say has changed his mood ? How has the poet's mood changed ?  
 (ii) Why does the poet say, "I would not intrude on him" ? Why doesn't he offer him money to buy another ball ?  
 (iii) Is Amanda an orphan ? Why does she say so ?

- Q. 13. Answer the following questions (30 words) : (any two) 4  
 (i) Why does Mrs. Pumphrey think the dog's recovery is "a triumph of surgery"?  
 (ii) What does he say about the different reactions of people when they are robbed?  
 (iii) Why does Mrs. Hall find the scientist eccentric?
- Q. 14. Answer the following questions (75 words) : (any two) 6  
 (i) How did Mandela's 'Hunger for freedom' change his life?  
 (ii) Why does Maddle stand by and not do anything? How is she different from Peggy? Why?  
 (iii) How do you usually understand the idea of 'selfishness'? Do you agree with Kisa Gotami that she was being 'Selfish in her grief'?
- Q. 15. Do you know the story of Rapunzel? Why does she (Amanda) want to be Rapunzel? 3  
 Or, Where are the trees in the poem? What do their roots, their leaves and their twigs do?
- Q. 16. What other extraordinary things happen at the Inn? 3  
 Or, How do they replace the necklace?

## BOARD QUESTION PAPER 2023

Time : 3 Hours

M.M. : 75

- Instructions :** (i) Read all the questions carefully.  
 (ii) Read the instructions given with the questions before attempting them.  
 (iii) Marks of each question are indicated against it.  
 Question 11, 12, 13 in 30 words. Question 14, 15, 16 in 75 words.

### Section-A

(Reading)

- Q. 1. Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below :
- There, once, was a stingy baker. A poor man would stand outside his bakery every day, enjoying the nice smell of baking bread. The baker was very angry at the poor man. He felt that anyone who smelled his delicious products should pay for the smell. So he took the poor man to the court.
- The judge heard the baker's complaint patiently. Then he asked the poor man, "Do you have any money?"
- The poor man searched his pocket and produced two small coins. "This is all the money I have," he said to the judge.
- The judge took the coins from the poor man. The baker smiled and eagerly held out his hand.
- But the judge did not give the baker the money. He only jingled the coins together. He then returned them to the poor man, saying, "Punishment should fit the crime. The price for the smell of bread shall be the sound of money".

**Questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for the above passage : 1
- (a) Kingdom of Fools                      (b) Love begets Love  
 (c) There is a will, there is a way      (d) Tit for Tat.



2. Which word is the opposite of the word 'rich' : 1  
 (a) Honest (b) Stingy (c) Poor (d) Judge.
3. The poor man stood outside the bakery : 1  
 (a) To buy bread (b) To eat bread  
 (c) To enjoy the smell of baking bread (d) To steal bread.
4. The baker took the poor man to ..... : 1  
 (a) Court (b) Temple  
 (c) Bakery (d) His home.
5. How many coins were found in poor man's pocket : 1  
 (a) Twenty (b) Two  
 (c) Four (d) One.

Q.2 Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below it :

A bee went to a tank to quench its thirst, and tumbling in, was almost drowned. A dove that happened to pass that way saw the danger the bee was in. It hastened to a neighbouring tree and, plucking off a leaf, dropped it into the water before the bee. The bee climbed on to the leaf, dried its wings and flew away to its hive, full of gratitude to the dove that had saved its life.

A few days later the same bee, while returning to its hive after a hard day's work, saw a cruel boy taking aim at the dove sitting upon the branch of a tree. At once, the bee flew to the wrist of the boy and, just when he was going to shoot the dove, stung it. The boy danced with pain while the dove, realizing the danger to which it was exposed, flew safely away.

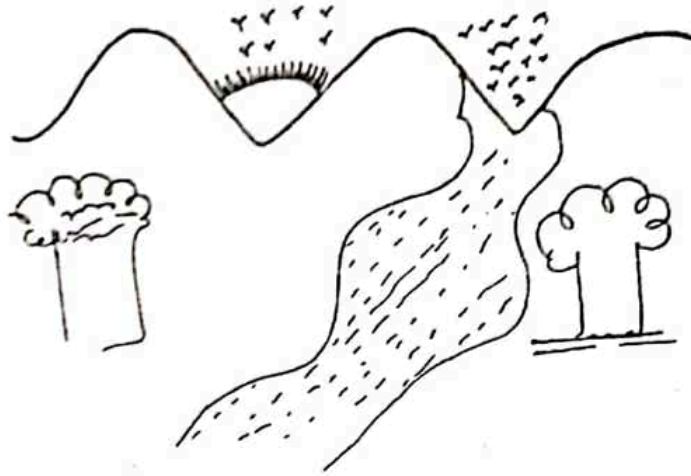
Questions :

1. What did the bee feel when it was saved by the dove : 1  
 (a) Proud (b) Gratitude (c) Guilty (d) Disappoint
2. Who danced with the pain : 1  
 (a) The boy (b) Dove (c) Bee (d) Elephant.
3. The meaning of the word 'tumbling' is ..... : 1  
 (a) Falling (b) Neighbouring  
 (c) Swimming (d) Crying.
4. The bee went to the tank ..... : 1  
 (a) To quench its thirst (b) To meet another bee  
 (c) To save dove (d) To bath.
5. Who saved the bee : 1  
 (a) Falcon (b) Boy (c) Ant (d) Dove.

### Section-B

- Q.3. Write an essay on any one of the following topics in about 150 words : 5  
 (i) Online Education  
 (ii) Disadvantages of Social Media  
 (iii) Population Growth  
 (iv) Electric Vehicles  
 (v) Women Empowerment.
- Q.4. Write a paragraph in about 150 words on "Importance of English".

- Q. 4. Look at the visual input given below and write a small paragraph in about 75 words :



- Q. 5. Read the passage carefully and answer the following questions :

Since time began, the natural broad - leaved mixed forests of the Himalayas have played a crucial role in the life of the people of that region. In fact, the forests are the foundation of the whole economy of the hill villages. Green leaves and grass, for example, provide fodder for the animals whose dung is used as fertilizer. Dry twigs and branches are the only sources of domestic cooking fuel. The forests also provide large supplies of fruits, edible nuts, fibres and herbs for local consumption. The forest break the flow of the seasonal rainfall that lashes the slopes of this mountain range every year during the monsoon. This creates springs and perennial streams which are vital for the mountain people and their animals during the hot summer months.

For many years, however, large areas of these rich forest resources have been destroyed. For example, the forests of Tehri Garhwal were exploited to supply timber for the expanding railway network in the plains. The people of Tehri Garhwal in 1930 began a non-cooperation movement called Satyagrahaa form of peaceful resistance to obtain justice in opposition to the oppressive forest laws.

Questions :

- (i) On the basis of your reading of the above passage make a note on it using abbreviations if needed. 3
- (ii) Give a suitable title to it. 1
- Q. 6. You are Manas/Mansi, studying in Govt. Higher Secondary School, Balaghat. Write an application to your principal for issuing you school leaving certificate. 4
- Or, You are Ritik/Ritika, lives in Indore. Write a letter to your friend inviting him/her on your father's promotion party.

### Section-C

(Grammar)

- Q. 7. Fill in the blanks (any five) : 5
- (i) We ..... follow the traffic rules. (must, should, might)
- (ii) He died ..... cancer. (of, off, on)
- (iii) Ritu has ..... friends. (much, many, any)
- (iv) She ..... a song. (singing, sings, sung)
- (v) ..... you live long ! (can, might, may)



- (vi) July comes ..... August. (before, after, with)  
 (vii) Ashoka was one of ..... greatest kings of India. (a, an, the)
- Ans. (i) should, (ii) of, (iii) many, (iv) sings, (v) may, (vi) Before, (vii) the.
- Q.8. Do as directed (any five) : 5
- (i) The boy is my nephew.  
 The boy is wearing a blue shirt. (Rewrite the pair of sentences using 'who')
- (ii) Unless you run fast, you will miss the train. (Use 'If' in place of 'Unless')
- (iii) Police arrested the thief. (Make negative)
- (iv) Ram writes a letter. (Change the voice)
- (v) Swimming is a good habit. (Rewrite the sentence beginning with "It")
- (vi) Mamta goes to school everyday. (Make interrogative)
- (vii) He is so fat that he cannot run fast. (use too ..... to)
- Ans. (i) The boy who is wearing a blue shirt is my friend.  
 (ii) If you donot run fast, you will miss the train.  
 (iii) Police did not arrest the thief.  
 (iv) A letter is written by Ram.  
 (v) It is a good habit to swim.  
 (vi) Does she go to school everyday ?  
 (vii) He is so fat that he cannot run fast.

### Section-D

(Text Books)

- Q.9. (a) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions given below it :
- The moon was coming up in the east, behind me, and stars were shining in the clear sky above me. There wasn't a cloud in the sky. I was happy to be alone high up above the sleeping country side. I was flying my old Dakota aeroplane over France back to England. I was dreaming of my holiday and looking forward to being with my family. I looked at my watch : one thirty in the morning.
- Questions :
- How was the weather when pilot started flying aeroplane : 1  
 (a) Clear (b) Foggy (c) Rainy (d) Sunny.
  - Pilot was going to ..... : 1  
 (a) France (b) India (c) USA (d) England.
  - The above passage is taken from which lesson : 1  
 (a) His First Flight (b) Black Aeroplane  
 (c) A Letter to God (d) Glimpses of India.
- (b) Read the extract carefully and answer the questions given below it :
- The fog comes  
 on little cat feet.  
 It sits looking  
 over harbour and city  
 on silent haunches  
 and then moves on.
- Questions :
- What has been personified in above given lines : 1  
 (a) Harbour (b) City (c) Fog (d) Cat.
  - After sitting fog ..... : 1  
 (a) Disappears (b) Moves on (c) Sits there only (d) Gets dense.

3. The poet of the above poem is ..... :  
 (a) Pablo Neruda (b) Robert Frost (c) Robin Klein (d) Carl Sandburg. 1
- Q. 10. Answer the following Questions :  
 1. According to Nelson Mandela, what comes naturally to human heart : 1  
 (a) Hatred (b) Love (c) Unity (d) Discrimination.  
 2. What was the name of Anne's diary : 1  
 (a) Betty (b) Kitten (c) Kitty (d) Kitty.  
 3. Coorg is famous for ..... : 1  
 (a) Tea (b) Coffee (c) Sandal (d) Jute.  
 4. What name was given to Otter : 1  
 (a) Major (b) Taro (c) Jim (d) Mijbil.
- Q. 11. Answer the following questions in about 30 words : (any two) [2 × 2 = 4]  
 (i) How did the narrator cure Tricki ?  
 (ii) How did Ausable get rid of Max ?  
 (iii) How did Griffin become invisible ?
- Q. 12. Answer the following questions : (any six) 12  
 (1) Who or what did Leneho have faith in ? What did he do ?  
 (2) What Nelson Mandela thought about the oppressor ?  
 (3) Why were two national anthems sung ?  
 (4) What compelled young seagull to take his first flight ?  
 (5) What is the Chinese legend about tea ?  
 (6) How did Valli react for the dead cow ?  
 (7) Why did Siddhartha Gautama abandon his luxurious life ?  
 (8) Where did Siddhartha Gautama get enlightenment ?  
 What name was given to him after that ?
- Q. 13. Answer the following questions in 30 words : (any two) [2 × 2 = 4]  
 (i) In the reference of the poem 'Fire and Ice', how will the world end ?  
 (ii) What are the things that Amanda's mother ask her to do and not to do ?  
 (iii) How will the departure of the trees affect the house ?
- Q. 14. What does the young boy say to Anne Gregory ? 3  
 Or, Why did Custard cry for a nice safe cage ? Why is the dragon called "Cowardly dragon" ?
- Q. 15. Noodle avoids offending Think-Tank but at the same time he corrects his mistakes. How does he manage to do that ? 3  
 Or, The course of the Loiseles' life changed due to the necklace. Comment.
- Q. 16. How did Valli plan her bus ride ? What did she find out about the bus, and how did she save up the fare ? 3  
 Or, How does the marriage finally take place ?



Navbodh

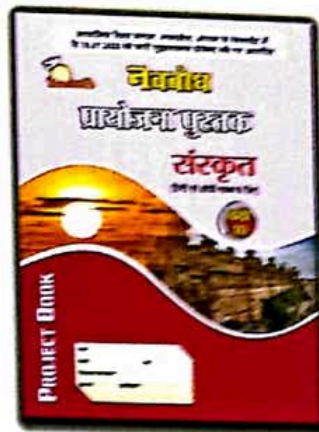
माध्यमिक शिक्षा मण्डल, मध्यप्रदेश भोपाल के वेबसाइट में जारी सुझावात्मक प्रोजेक्ट वर्क पर आधारित



# नवबोध

## प्रायोजना पुस्तक PROJECT BOOK

कक्षा 10 वीं के लिए



म.प्र. के लिए कक्षा IX व X हेतु NCERT के पाठ्यपुस्तकों पर आधारित प्रश्नोत्तर एवं व्याकरण सहित नवबोध भारती छपकर तैयार

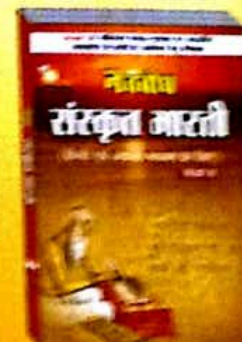


# नवबोध



# भारती

कक्षा X के लिए



Scanned with CamScanner

Telegram - @askclasses10 / PDF website - askclasses.com